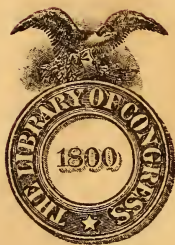


# MARINE CORPS HISTORICAL LIBRARY

~~CONFIDENTIAL~~ HQMC ROOM 3127



Class \_\_\_\_\_

Book \_\_\_\_\_

10  
Rollin L. Tilton.  
Coast Artillery Corps  
U. S. Army

Col. A. C. Thompson





MANUAL  
OF  
MILITARY FIELD ENGINEERING

FOR THE USE OF  
OFFICERS AND TROOPS OF THE LINE.

PREPARED AT THE  
UNITED STATES INFANTRY AND CAVALRY SCHOOL

BY THE  
DEPARTMENT OF ENGINEERING,  
CAPT. WM. D. BEACH, 3D CAVALRY, INSTRUCTOR.

---

NINTH EDITION.

REVISED BY  
MAJOR WM. D. BEACH, GENERAL STAFF,  
Chief of the Second (Military Information) Division,  
War Department.  
MAJOR E. A. ROOT, 19TH INFANTRY.  
MAJOR T. H. SLAVENS, QUARTERMASTER, U. S. A

---

Franklin Hudson Publishing Company,  
Kansas City, Mo.

ENTERED ACCORDING TO THE ACT OF CONGRESS IN THE YEAR 1897, BY THE  
HUDSON-KIMBERLY PUBLISHING CO., IN THE OFFICE OF THE  
LIBRARIAN OF CONGRESS. AT WASHINGTON.

---

COPYRIGHTED 1902, BY THE  
HUDSON-KIMBERLY PUBLISHING COMPANY,  
KANSAS CITY, U. S. A.

---

COPYRIGHTED 1907, BY THE  
FRANKLIN HUDSON PUBLISHING COMPANY,  
KANSAS CITY, U. S. A.

**By exchange**  
**Army & Navy Club**

**JUN 22 1940**

5433

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

The necessity existing at the Infantry and Cavalry School for a text-book on Field Engineering, including the various military expedients recognized in our service, is deemed sufficient reason for the following pages.

Most of the subjects treated of in this volume may be found in various military works published in our country during the past twenty-five years, but the fact remains that no one book has covered the required ground, nor has their revision been of very recent date; while, at the same time, the new field gun and small calibre rifle have necessarily modified previously existing profiles of Field Works and Shelter Trenches.

Access has been had to corresponding publications of the Germans, French, English and Austrians. as well as to our own Official Rebellion Records and many other available sources, native and foreign.

It has been the endeavor to limit the scope of this work to subjects considered indispensable as a part of a line officer's education.

The following Assistant Instructors in the Department of Engineering—viz.: 1st Lieut. E. A. Root, 19th Infantry; 1st Lieut. W. C. Wren, 17th Infantry, and 1st Lieut. T. H. Slavens, 6th Cavalry, have been associated with the undersigned in the preparation of this volume.

WM. D. BEACH.

*Captain, 3d Cavalry.*

U. S. Infantry and Cavalry School,

Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, July, 1894.

Headquarters of the Army, Adjutant-General's Office,  
Washington, March 25, 1895.

Circular No. 4.

With the approval of the Secretary of War, the special study of the books, pamphlets, orders, etc., hereinafter named, by officers of the army subject to examinations for promotion, is recommended:

\* \* \* \* \*

Manual of Field Engineering—Captain W. D. Beach, 3rd Cavalry.

\* \* \* \* \*

By command of Lieutenant-General Schofield.

[Signed] GEO. D. RUGGLES.

*Adjutant-General.*

## PREFACE TO THE NINTH EDITION.

A new edition of this manual having been called for, it was decided to make a thorough revision of the subject matter and bring the work up to date: the result is here published. The last general revision made after the Spanish-American War has been found in some respects faulty in the light of opinions based on the last great war, the Russo-Japanese. Especially is this so in the matter of profiles of field works and hasty intrenchments, both of which the Japanese, as well as the Russians, deemed it wise to modify during the progress of the War.

Experiences gleaned from that conflict render it certain that troops subjected to shrapnel fire of well-trained batteries *must* intrench or suffer enormous losses, and, in order to have trenches for both cover and fire effective, opportunity must be afforded the occupants when not firing to sit with their backs and heads close against the front wall of the trench. Profiles of shelter trenches have therefore been changed to meet this requirement.

It is but a truism to add that hasty intrenchments and field works if rightly constructed and their real function understood are useful servants, otherwise they are dangerous masters.

Upon the line officer in the future as in the past will devolve the responsibility of tracing and directing the construction of shelter trenches, as well as making intelligent use of expedients in bridging, rafting, road-building, camping and sanitation.

As modern civilization tends to diminish the number of men skilled in handicraft, so much the more necessary does it become

for all officers to require of their men greater familiarity with what is ordinarily termed "military expedients." In the profession of arms, as in other avocations, results may be attained and ends reached in many ways, but their accomplishment with economy of life and treasure marks a skilled soldier worthy of the best traditions of the military service.

To the study of the reports of the American officers who accompanied the Russian and Japanese armies in Manchuria as observers of that mighty struggle, the revisers of this volume are greatly indebted: the ideas and in places the words of these representatives of our Army have, with their consent, been freely used and acknowledgment is here made to each.

W. D. B.

Washington, D. C., August, 1906.

## List of Books Consulted in the Preparation of this Work.

---

Aide Memoire, R. E.....	<i>Vols. 1-2.</i>
A Move for Better Roads.....	<i>L. A. Haupt.</i>
Appleton's Cyclopædia of Applied Mechanics, Vols. 1-2.	
Civil Engineering.....	<i>Wheeler.</i>
Cours de Fortification Passagère.....	<i>De Guise.</i>
Ecole de Fortification de Campagne.....	<i>French.</i>
Elements of Field Fortification.....	<i>Wheeler.</i>
Engineering News.....	<i>Magazine.</i>
Engineer's Pocket-Book.....	<i>Trautwine.</i>
Field Fortification.....	<i>Turner.</i>
Field Fortification.....	<i>Hutchinson.</i>
Field Works.....	<i>Brackenbury.</i>
Field Works Used in War. (Translation from the German) . . . . .	<i>Wilson.</i>
Good Roads.....	<i>Magazine.</i>
Gun Powder and High Explosives.....	<i>Walke.</i>
International Cyclopædia.....	<i>Dodd, Mead &amp; Co.</i>
Journal of the Military Service Institution of the U. S.	
Journal of the U. S. Cavalry Association.	
Manual for Engineer Troops.....	<i>Duane.</i>
Manual of Military Engineering.....	<i>Ernst.</i>
Manual for Railway Engineers . . . . .	<i>G. L. Vose.</i>
Manuel de Fortification de Campagne....	<i>Brialmont.</i>
Manuel des Travaux de Fortification de Campagne, par un Capitaine d'Infanterie.	
Manuel de Fortification.....	<i>Plessix and Legrand.</i>
Manual of Heavy Artillery.....	<i>Tidball.</i>
Military Bridges.....	<i>Haupt.</i>
Military Bridges.....	<i>Chester.</i>
Military Engineering, Instruction in....	<i>Chatham Course.</i>
Military Land Mines.....	<i>Mercur.</i>
Military Transport.....	<i>Furse.</i>

Modern High Explosives.....	<i>Eissler.</i>
Notes on Military Hygiene.....	<i>A. A. Woodhull.</i>
Official Records of the Rebellion, U. S. ....	<i>War Department.</i>
Organization and Tactics.....	<i>Wagner.</i>
Pionier Taschenbuch, Berlin, 1893.....	<i>Official.</i>
Report of Chief Signal Officer, U. S., 1893..	<i>War Department.</i>
Roads and Railroads.....	<i>Chester.</i>
Roads and Railroads.....	<i>Gillespie.</i>
Roads, Streets, and Pavements.....	<i>Gillmore.</i>
Temporary Fortification .....	<i>Chester.</i>
The American Railway .....	<i>Scribner.</i>
U. S. Bridge Equipage and Drill .....	<i>War Department.</i>



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Chapter.	Page.	Plate.
I. General Principles.. . . . .	11	
II. Fire, Projectiles and Penetration.. . . .	15	
III. Field Geometry.. . . . .	20	1, 2
IV. Hasty Intrenchments, Gun Pits and Epaulements.. . . . .	27	3-4a
V. Clearing the Ground.. . . . .	38	5, 6
VI. Obstacles.. . . . .	42	7, 8
VII. Field Works.. . . . .	52	9-15
VIII. Working Parties.. . . . .	77	16
IX. Revetting Materials and Revetments.. . . .	81	17, 18
X. Field Casemates and Magazines.. . . . .	95	19, 20
XI. Field Works in Combination.. . . . .	101	21
XII. Siege Works.. . . . .	108	22-23a
XIII. Defense of Localities.. . . . .	113	24-29
XIV. Use of Cordage and Spars.. . . . .	132	30-33
XV. Spar Bridges.. . . . .	147	34-40a
XVI. Floating Bridges.. . . . .	180	41-49
XVII. Roads.. . . . .	212	50
XVIII. Railroads.. . . . .	221	51, 52
XIX. Telegraph and Telephone Lines.. . . . .	233	54
XX. Demolitions.. . . . .	241	55-57
XXI. Camping Expedients.. . . . .	259	58-60



# MANUAL OF MILITARY FIELD ENGINEERING.

---

## CHAPTER I.—General Principles.

1.—Military Field Engineering may be defined to be the art of utilizing the materials at hand for the attainment of the security, effectiveness, health and comfort of an army in the field.

The modern rifle has vastly increased the value of cover, both in attack and defense, and rendered necessary the application of the principles of fortification to an army in the field. The result to be obtained in all fortification is to so strengthen a position, by artificial means, that a force occupying it may successfully resist or subdue another attacking it.

2.—Fortification is divided into two general classes, viz.:

(a)—Permanent.

(b)—Temporary or Field Fortifications.

With the former this manual has nothing to do.

3.—The latter division includes three quite distinct classes.

The first comprises all works devised for the temporary protection of important points, such as cities, arsenals, bridges, fords, positions, etc., and are technically known as *Field Works*.

The second comprises the various devices of the engineer for reducing a fortified place by means of parallels and approaches, called *Siege Works*.

The third division relates particularly to the quickly made defenses by which an army in the presence of an enemy protects itself; these are known as *Battle Intrenchments* or *Hasty Intrenchments*.

4.—A **Defensive Position** is one affording protection from the shot and observation of an enemy and, at the same time, commanding the ground in front, within range.

A position of perfect defense is not possible, but the following general principles are to be fulfilled as nearly as circumstances will permit.

(1) The defenders' position should conform to the special tactical requirements of the occasion\* and should be such as to favor the use of their relatively strongest arm.

(2) It should be made impossible for the enemy to obtain natural cover during his advance. In other words, the position should have a free field of fire.

(3) The defenders should be protected from the fire and view of the enemy by cover so arranged as not to interfere with counter-attacks.

(4) The advance of the enemy should be hindered by obstacles so arranged that he may be checked while under the fire of the defenders.

(5) Communications should be such that the defenders may freely move from one part of the position to another, while the contrary should obtain with respect to the enemy's ground in front.

---

\*A purely defensive position, for instance, might have its flanks resting on impassable obstacles, and thus be secure from a turning movement, but this same position might be found to be a faulty one were a quick offensive movement, by the defenders, contemplated.

The chief requisite of a defensive position is a free field of fire, especially at short and mid ranges. If the position is judiciously selected the field of fire will generally be obtained without much difficulty, but the advantages of the position and the effect of the fire may be enhanced by temporary fortifications. The cutting down of slight ridges which might afford cover for the enemy within effective range or the removal of hedges, fences, etc., may sometimes be of more benefit than the actual preparation of defenses.

In the present advanced state of efficiency of fire-arms, artificial cover is, however, of greater importance than ever before. Constructed in the right place, at the proper time, field fortifications may render indispensable service, while their neglect may insure defeat.

5.—While formerly it was the special province of the Engineer to lay out and supervise the construction of defensive works, it has now, under the changed condition of warfare, become the work of the Line as well, and it may be laid down as an accepted rule that the defensive arrangements for a given position are to be made by the troops which are to occupy it.

These changes have affected the art in many ways. The field works now constructed are simpler, ruder, less regular, and less angular than before. An army in the presence of an enemy always fortifies, whether in camp, in bivouac, or in line.

6.—Rapidity of execution renders necessary the adoption of fixed types of works in the exercises in time of peace; but these types will sometimes be susceptible of modification in their real application. However, even in war, the endeavor should be to approximate to the regulation forms, for they are deduced from experience and observation, and realize, as well as possible, for each particular case, the best conditions of resistance compatible with rapidity of execution.

The advantage of regulation types is understood at once when

it is borne in mind that, upon the battle-field, there should be no hesitation; everyone should stick to his individual role in order to unite efficiently in combined action.

Thorough study and frequent practical exercises, conducted methodically, are indispensable in order to escape feeling one's way, with the loss of time that an insufficient instruction renders inevitable. Upon the battle-field a few minutes may decide the fate of armies in each other's sight.

7.—Fortification, which at first glance may appear to dominate, as representing the "security" and "effectiveness" of an army, the other and apparently less important subjects relating to health and comfort, is, however, so intimately connected with them that neglect of one may render all the others useless. Thus, "bridges," "roads," and "railroads" may, under certain conditions, relate particularly to the effectiveness and security of an army, in connection with Fortification, while under other circumstances they may be as important as various "camping expedients" in the attainment of "health" and "comfort."

## CHAPTER II.—Fire, Projectiles and Penetration.

**8.—Fire** as regards its direction is classified as follows:

(1) **Frontal**, when it is delivered at right angles to the front of the enemy's line, and sometimes so termed when delivered straight to its own front.

(2) **Oblique**, when the direction of the fire is at an oblique angle to the front of the enemy's line.

(3) **Enfilade**, which is delivered from positions on the prolongation of the enemy's line. In this case, the line of fire sweeps the enemy's front. When fire is used to sweep along the front of a defensive line and thus enfilade the assailants as they approach the position, it is known as flanking fire.

(4) **Reverse**, when delivered so as to strike troops or lines of defense from the rear.

(5) **Cross**, when the lines of fire from different positions cross on or in front of the enemy's line.

As regards its trajectory it is classified as

(1) **Direct**, when delivered at seen objects at moderate angles of elevation—in the case of artillery when delivered at seen objects, with service charges at elevations not exceeding  $15^{\circ}$ .

(2) **Indirect or Curved**, when delivered with small-arms against an unseen object protected by a seen covering obstacle—in the case of artillery, as above, or with guns, howitzers or mortars with reduced charges at angles not exceeding  $15^{\circ}$ . Thus firing over an intervening hill at troops sheltered behind it would be an example of indirect fire.

(3) **High Angle**, when used at angles exceeding  $15^{\circ}$ .

(4) **Grazing**, when the projectile travels approximately parallel to the ground.

(5) **Plunging**, the muzzle is required to be depressed.

9.—The Artillery Projectiles used in the United States Army are *shell* and *shrapnel*.

10.—**Shell.** Shell are classified as common shell and high explosive shell. The common shell is a hollow cast-iron cylinder with an ogival head and contains a bursting charge of black powder. The high explosive shell is of practically the same shape and dimensions as the common shell, but is made of steel and contains a bursting charge of high explosive (a picric acid compound). The bursting charge in both the common and high explosive shell is exploded by percussion fuse. Either shell may be characterized as a flying mine, the chief object of which is to destroy material objects at a distance, although either may be used effectively against troops. The common shell is more or less obsolete.

11.—**Shrapnel.** The shrapnel differs from either kind of shell, in that it is filled with bullets and is intended for use against animate objects. The case or envelope of the shrapnel is a hollow cylinder of forged steel, in the base of which is placed a bursting charge of black powder which is not sufficiently large to rupture the case. The charge is exploded by means of a combination fuse—*i. e.*, one which can be set to operate at the end of a given time after the gun is fired, or by percussion on impact should the projectile strike before the time element of the fuse has acted. With the time element set at “safety,” the fuse acts as ordinary percussion fuse. On the explosion of the charge in the shrapnel, the bullets are projected forward from the case with an additional velocity of about 200 feet per second. The shrapnel for the 3-inch gun contains 252 lead bullets about  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch in diameter and weighing about 42 to the pound. They are held in place by a solid smoke-producing matrix, which is melted and poured into the shrapnel after the bullets are in place.



12.—**Canister**, which was formerly used to a great extent, especially with smooth-bore guns, is now obsolete. The same object is attained by setting the time fuse of the shrapnel at zero, which explodes the shrapnel a few feet in front of the muzzle of the gun.

13.—**Field Guns** range up to from 6,500 to 7,000 yards, but will seldom be used at ranges greater than 4,000 yards.

14.—**The U. S. Magazine Rifle, M. 1903**, when used as a single loader, has fired 23 aimed shots in one minute and 25 in the same time using magazine fire; it is sighted to 2,500 yards; its computed range is 4,247 yards, when fired at an elevation of 42 degrees. On level ground, when fired from the lying position at the foot of a target 600 yards distant (the sight being set for that range), the danger space is continuous.\*

The average heights over which fire may be delivered are as follows: man standing, 4 ft. 4 ins.; kneeling, 3 ft.; lying down, 1 ft.; field guns, 3 ft.

15.—The following thickness of material may be considered as proof against small-arm projectiles at all ranges:

Sand**.....	24 in.
Earth**.....	30 in.
Gabion filled with earth.....	1
Well-made fascines.....	3

\*Point-blank Danger Space, from actual firing, sights down:

Position	Assumed Height of Line of Sight above Ground.	Point-blank Danger Space.
Standing.....	56 Inches.	407.0 Yards.
Kneeling.....	30 Inches.	324.6 Yards.
Lying.....	12 Inches.	227.0 Yards.

\*\*Penetration in earth and sand is always less at very close ranges (50 to 100 feet) than at 500 yards.

Sand bag well packed, header.....	1
“ “ “ “ “stretcher.....	2
Packed snow.....	79 in.
Soft wood.....	60 in.
Oak or other hard wood.....	24 in.
Grain sheaves piled.....	16 ft.
Iron plate.....	7-16 in.
Steel plate.....	$\frac{3}{4}$ in.
Masonry brickwork with broken joints*.....	20 in.
Crib of broken stone.....	8 in.

Against field artillery.

Sand.....	10 ft.
Earth.....	13 ft.
Clay.....	17 ft.
Snow well packed.....	27 ft.
Masonry (for a short time).....	40 in.

15a.—The mean penetration of shells from siege guns, with a striking velocity of about 800 feet, is:

	6-inch Guns. <i>Feet.</i>	8- and 10 inch Gun. <sup>s</sup> <i>Feet.</i>
Sand, mixed with gravel.....	9.84	11.48
Light earth.....	13.12	16.73
Light earth, loose (newly stirred up).....	14.76	20.34
Clay (argillaceous earth).....	21.33	27.89

\*A wall two bricks thick, breaking the joints, will stop any one bullet, but after a time the bricks will be smashed and some bullets get through.

A well-built wall with fine joints set in cement mortar, 9 inches thick, is practically bullet-proof.

A 24-inch sun-dried brick wall is fairly bullet-proof a short time after setting.

## Dimensions of craters made by 6- and 8.5-inch shells:

	6-inch.		8.5-inch.	
	Diam. Feet.	Depth. Feet.	Diam. Feet.	Depth. Feet.
Clayey earth... ..	16.48	4.9	22.3	6.9
Calcareous sandstone... ..	13.1	3.3	16.4	3.9
Concrete... ..	9.8	3	11.5	3.3
Rough masonry... ..	9	2	6.6	3

*Note.*—With delayed-action fuses, shells burst after gaining a certain penetration. The maximum effect of the bursting charge will be found on the line of least resistance.

### CHAPTER III.—Field Geometry.

16.—Before proceeding to that portion of field engineering which involves geometry some of its simplest applications will be explained.

17.—Slopes. The usual description of a slope is by a fraction, the numerator being the height and the denominator the base. Thus, in Pl. 1, Fig. 1, the vertical height is 1-6th part of the base, and the slope is read as 1 on 6. In Fig. 2, the slope is 6 on 1.

18.—To lay out a **Right Angle: First Method.** Let A be a point in the line BC, Fig. 3. Lay off from A the equal distances AD and AE. With a radius greater than AD, and with D and E as centers, describe arcs cutting each other at X. Join X with A. Then is XA perpendicular to BC.

**Second Method.** Find a point such that the distances are in the proportions of 3, 4 and 5: then will the angle included between the two shorter sides be a right angle. Thus (Fig. 4) with chain or tape measure the distance AD equal to 4 yds. Place one end of tape at D, the other at A, pulling it out and making XD equal to 5 yds., XA equal to 3 yds.

**Third Method.** At extremity of line, as A (Fig. 4), assume any point as C. Measure distance CA, set a stake on line BA at a distance from C equal to CA, as D. Set a third stake on line CD at X, making CX equal to CD. Then will XA be perpendicular to BA.

19.—To erect a perpendicular to a line from a point without. Let X (Fig. 5) be the point without, then, with X as a center, and a distance greater than XA as radius, describe an arc cutting BC at D and E. With D and E as centers, and with a radius greater

# PLATE 1.

Figure 1.

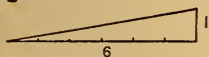


Figure 2.

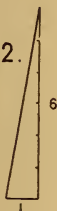


Figure 3.

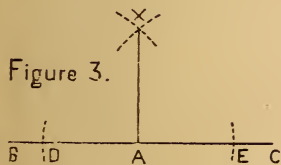


Figure 4.

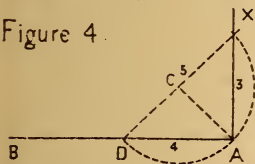


Figure 5.

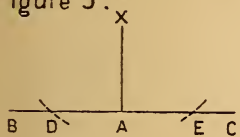


Figure 6.

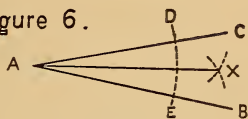


Figure 7.

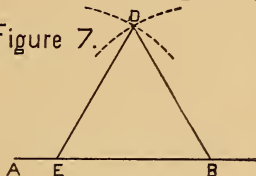


Figure 8.

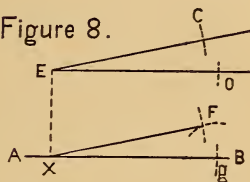


Figure 9.

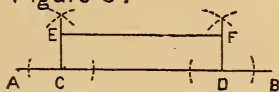


Figure 10.

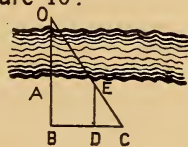
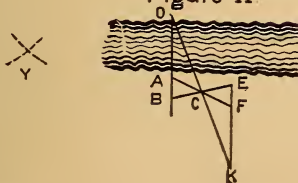


Figure 11.



than DA, describe arcs cutting each other at Y. Join X and Y. Then will XY be perpendicular to BC.

20.—To bisect a given angle. Let BAC (Fig. 6) be the angle. With A as a center, and with any convenient radius, as AD, describe an arc cutting AB and AC at E and D. With D and E as centers, describe arcs cutting each other at X. Join X with A. The line XA bisects the angle BAC.

21.—To lay out an equilateral triangle constructing adjacent angles of  $60^\circ$  and  $120^\circ$ . Let AB (Fig. 7) be a given line. Lay off from B any convenient distance, as BE. Then, with B and E as centers, and a radius equal to BE, describe arcs cutting each other at D. Join D with E and B. The angles DEB, DBE and EDB are each equal to  $60^\circ$ . The angle AED is equal to  $120^\circ$ . Combining this method with that of slopes an angle of almost any number of degrees can be laid out.

22.—To lay out an angle equal to a given angle. Let X (Fig. 8) be a point in the line AB, from which it is required to lay out an angle equal to OEC. Fix the points O and C at convenient distances from E. From X lay off Xg equal to OE. Then, with X and G as centers, and EC and OC as radii respectively, strike arcs intersecting at F. Join X and F. The angle FXG is equal to the angle CEO.

23.—To draw a line parallel to a given line and at a given distance from it. Let AB (Fig. 9) be the given line. From any two points, as C and D, erect perpendiculars. On these lay off the required distance CE and DF. Join E and F.

24.—To find the distance between any two points when it cannot be measured directly. **First Method.** To find AO, take a point B in line with AO and from this point (Fig. 10) lay off any convenient angle, as ABC. At D make EDC equal to ABC. Meas-

ure BC, DC and DE, putting E in the line CO. From similar triangles

$$BO : BC :: DE : DC \therefore BO = \frac{BC \times DE}{DC}$$

From the result thus found, subtract the distance AB. The remainder is the distance AO.

**Second Method.** (Fig. 11.) Mark B in prolongation of the line AO. Assume any point as C. Lay off AF, making AC equal to CF: also BE, making BC equal to CE. Prolong EF until a point K is found in line with CO. Measure FK. This is the required distance.

**25.—Areas.** To find the area of a rectangle. Multiply the base by the height.

To find the area of a trapezoid. Multiply the sum of the two parallel sides by the perpendicular distance between them and take half the product.

To find the area of a triangle. Multiply the base by the altitude and take half the product. Or,

$$\text{Area} = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$$

in which s is the half sum of the three sides a, b, and c. Or,

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} a b \sin C$$

in which a and b are two sides and C the included angle.

**26.—The Field Level** (Pl. 2, Fig. 1) consists of three strips of wood, A, B and C, each  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. thick and 2 in. wide. A being 62 in. long, B and C each 44.42 in. The distance between centers on A is 60 in., on B and C 42.42 in. This makes a right angle between B and C. There is a thumb nut at E clamping the arm B to the arm A when the level is used. The screw at F projects, holding the arm B, when folded, up. There is a stud at H, affording an attachment for a plumb bob. There are permanent joints between B and C, and A and C.

Fig. 1 shows the level and its joints, plumb bob for reading slopes, and spirit level. Fig. 2 shows side for protracting angles.

**27.—Uses of Level.** The level may be used as follows:

- (1) As a spirit-level, the level being on the edge C.
- (2) As a square for setting out a right angle.
- (3) As a protractor.
- (4) For setting off slopes.
- (5) As a mason's level with a plumb bob.



# PLATE 2.

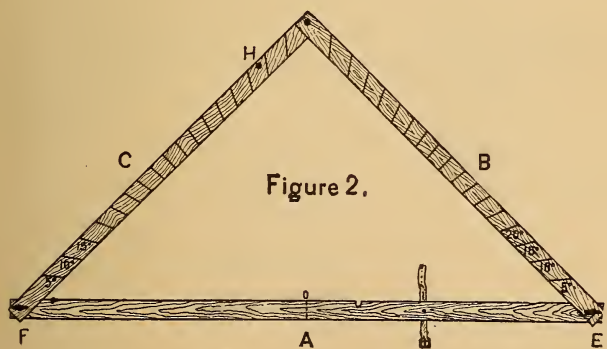
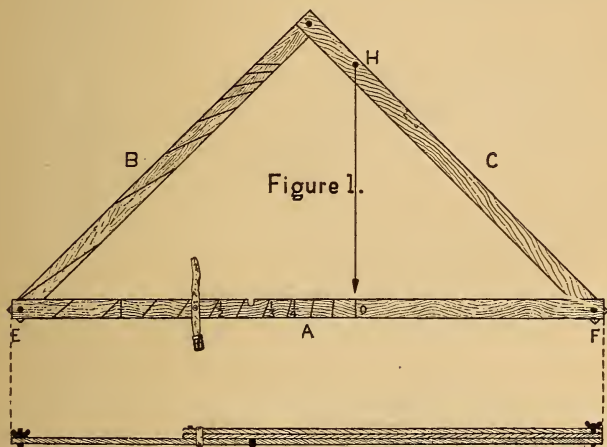


FIG. 1.

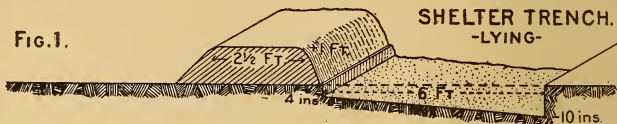


FIG. 2.

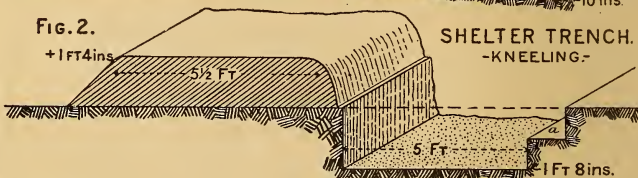


FIG. 3

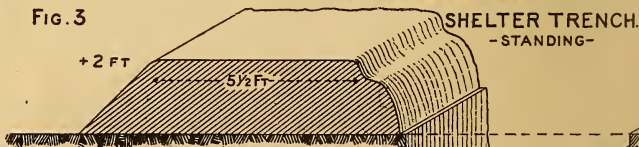


FIG. 4

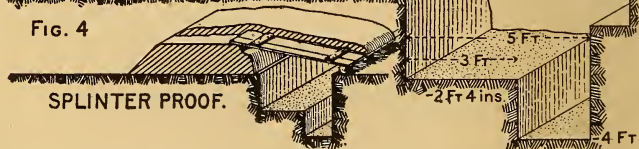


FIG. 5. SHELTER FOR SUPPORTS OR RESERVES.



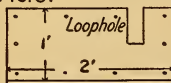
FIG. 6.



FIG. 7.



FIG. 8.



## CHAPTER IV.—Hasty Intrenchments, Gun Pits and Epaulements.

28.—The intensity of fire made possible by the fire-arms of to-day renders some form of shelter on the field of battle imperative. Circumstances may occur when advancing lines of skirmishers will find natural shelter, but in many cases artificial cover will have to be constructed on the spot.

Fortifications used on the field of battle depend, as to their position, extent and use, on the ground; in conformity to this idea they are constructed at the time of the battle, or when attack by superior numbers is imminent.

They are called "*Battle*" or "*Hasty*" *Intrenchments*, and should fulfill the following conditions:

(a) The thickness of earth embankment should be such that it will not be liable to penetration by small-arm projectiles or shrapnel fragments.

(b) The intrenchments should conform to the average heights over which men can fire in the various positions,—viz.: lying prone, 1 ft.; kneeling, 3 ft.; standing, 4 ft. 4 in.; and at the same time the height of earth embankment above the natural surface of the ground should be small, for the reason that the trenches can thus be more easily concealed, are less liable to be struck by artillery projectiles, and are more easily scaled in assuming the offensive.

Hasty or Battle Intrenchments consist of cover for

- (1) Skirmishers, lying, kneeling or sitting.
- (2) Firing Line, Supports and Reserves, kneeling, sitting or standing.
- (3) Gun Pits and Epaulements.

## 28 *Hasty Intrenchments, Gun Pits and Epaulements.*

29.—The shelter trench\* for skirmishers lying down is shown in Pl. 3, Fig. 1. It gives earth protection of a thickness of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet; this thickness of *loose* earth will stop small-arm projectiles under ordinary circumstances. The average time required by one man to make 5 ft. (2 paces) of this trench is, with large pick and shovel, 15 minutes; with small intrenching space (Pl. 6), 20 to 25 minutes.

The number of skirmishers that can use this trench is usually computed as two for each five feet of length, although three may occupy this space by lying partially on their left sides.

30.—For men kneeling in two ranks, cover is gained by deepening the trench already dug to 1 ft. 8 in. and making it 5 ft. wide with an embankment in front having a height of 1 ft. 4 in. and a resulting thickness of about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  ft. (Fig. 2.)

---

\*The *kneeling* trench was not employed by the Russians in the late war unless lack of time or the character of the ground made the *standing* trench impracticable; the *lying* trench was never seen.

With troops subjected to a well-directed shrapnel fire, the usefulness of the lying trench is limited to the offensive which has been checked and *must* hold out: cases of this kind may occur in battle during the infantry attack. When the enemy's position is a strong one, the attack may last days, as it did west and southwest of Shushan Hill in the battle of Liaoyang. Here the Japanese infantry in lying trenches constructed at the time remained for forty-eight hours in close proximity to the Russian trenches, and their fire never entirely ceased. The Russians were in standing trenches (note type of these trenches, Plate 3A), while the Japanese were in front of them at distances varying from 200 to 400 yards. An essential factor here was the growing kowliang, which extended to within 200 yards of the Russian trenches and effectively concealed the Japanese infantry.

To construct the lying trench under fire, skirmishers being at intervals of two paces, the following method has been used: Each man unprotected by a fold of the ground or otherwise, who has an intrenching tool, places his rifle close at hand, lies down on his left side and commences to dig, parallel to his body, a hollow as *long* as the distance from his left elbow to his knees, as *wide* as the length of the spade handle, and as *deep* as the length of the spade iron, placing grass and earth in front of his head. Having dug the hole, he rolls over into it, and, lying on his right side, proceeds as before, throwing the earth in front of the new position of his head. After having obtained sufficient cover, he passes the spade to the man next to him, who performs like work.

The average time required by one man to transform 5 ft. of the trench "lying" into the trench "kneeling" is, with large pick and shovel, 25 minutes; with small intrenching spade, 45 minutes.

Infantry in double rank kneeling can fire from this trench, the number of rifles being computed at 4 for each 5 ft. length of trench. The kneeling trench affords protection from rifle fire to men sitting, but horizontal fire from this position is impossible. The step at *a* would only appear in the converted trench.

**31.—Cover standing** is obtained by deepening the kneeling trench to 4 ft., leaving a step 20 in. high and 3 ft. wide next the front wall, so as to facilitate leaving the trench to the front and at the same time allowing a passage in rear protected from rifle fire. The step serves as a banquette for men firing over the embankment.\*

The embankment is given a height of 2 ft., the resulting thickness being about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  ft. (Fig. 3.)

The average time required by one man to transform 5 ft. of the trench "kneeling" into the trench "standing" is, with large pick and shovel, 1 hour.\*\*

---

\*On the second day of the battle of Liaoyang the Russian position was subjected to a fire of 250 field guns (estimated), and had it not been for their deep trenches they must either have suffered annihilation or been forced to retreat. As it was, the Russians were enabled to remain in position and check the Japanese infantry advance. This incident, as well as others, seems to emphasize the advantage of the deep, narrow trench for purely defensive action, while the broader, shallower trenches, although affording less protection, are better suited to the "defensive-offensive."

\*\*The ordinary form of Spanish hasty intrenchment for fire standing and cover sitting, kneeling or crouching is a trench about two feet wide and four feet deep, having vertical sides and no embankments. This type of trench does not readily permit relieving or reinforcing the occupants, and, as it is too narrow to permit carrying the wounded out, there results extreme suffering, since the injured must lie at the bottom and run the risk of being trampled upon. This trench has the advantage, however, of affording a small target for the enemy's artillery.

The Germans claim that the surface presented to shrapnel bul-

## 30 *Hasty Intrenchments, Gun Pits and Epaulements.*

32.—When *isolated trenches for single skirmishers lying* are desired, they should be made with the same section as that shown in Figure 1 and have a length of 1 pace. *Isolated kneeling trenches* for two men should also have a length of 1 pace, but the *rifle pit* or *isolated shelter standing* should be 5 ft. in length on account of difficulty in constructing a smaller one. The last readily accommodates three men, two of whom can fire over the embankment, while the third, standing in the 4 ft. trench, protects the flanks.

33.—When necessary to *intrench supports and reserves*, the cover kneeling or standing should be used in parallel rows close to one another. (Fig. 5.)

In the construction advantage should be taken, where possible, of plows for loosening the earth. Two or three plows following each other at intervals can be used to great advantage.

34.—The trenches here illustrated are all made on level ground and are simply *types* showing the best forms and giving general ideas as to the time required to construct cover.\* On slopes they must be modified so that the tops of the embankments are, in general, parallel to the ground; they may also be varied according to the kind of earth, sand requiring less thickness of embankment and gentler slopes than clayey soil, while sod mixed with earth allows greater penetration than earth without it.

The berm of shelter trench should be omitted and the inte-

---

lets by a man lying down is practically the same as a man standing in the open; therefore they do not believe in broad, shallow trenches. They advocate the making of trenches in the natural soil with the fresh earth carried away, or used for dummy trenches, so as to deceive the enemy's artillerists and prevent execution from shrapnel fire.

\*Cover from view only can, of course, be obtained much more quickly, but a penetrable cover is hardly more than a target to invite an enemy's fire.



rior slope made as steep as the soil will stand, revetting if necessary with sod, in order to afford greater protection from shrapnel fire; a slight saving of time without loss in effectiveness can be secured by throwing part of the earth from the kneeling and standing trenches to the rear.\*

**35.—**The location of trenches depends *primarily* on tactical situations, and *secondarily* on the nature of the ground.

*Primarily*, they should always occupy a position giving the greatest development of fire, and hence are generally located near the crest of the most abrupt slope—i. e., near the “military crest.” (See par. 153.) *The exact position is determined by placing the eye at a distance above the ground equal to the proposed height of embankment, and then selecting that line which gives a clear field of fire to the front.*

As to the *secondary consideration*, it is *desirable* in locating trenches to avoid stony ground and that close to the edges of woods, the former on account of the liability to flying fragments should the embankment be struck by an artillery projectile, and the latter by reason of the difficulty in constructing the trenches.

**36.—**Intervals in line of trenches. In all trenches except those for skirmishers lying down, intervals in the line should be left for the passage to the front of artillery and cavalry—this is especially necessary when cover standing is used. The intervals may vary in width according to circumstances, but should never be so wide as to preclude their defense by the trenches adjoining the opening.

**37.—**Splinter-proofs. When troops are required to remain in the trenches for any considerable period, they should be provided with *splinter-proofs* or shelters of some kind. Planks, old lumber, doors, etc., or, in their absence, small poles, may be used.

---

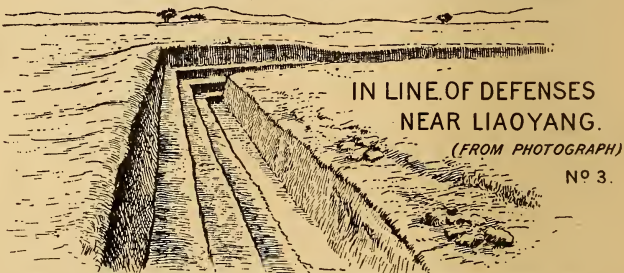
\*Actual types of the Japanese and Russian shelter trench are shown on Plate 3A.

# PLATE 3A.

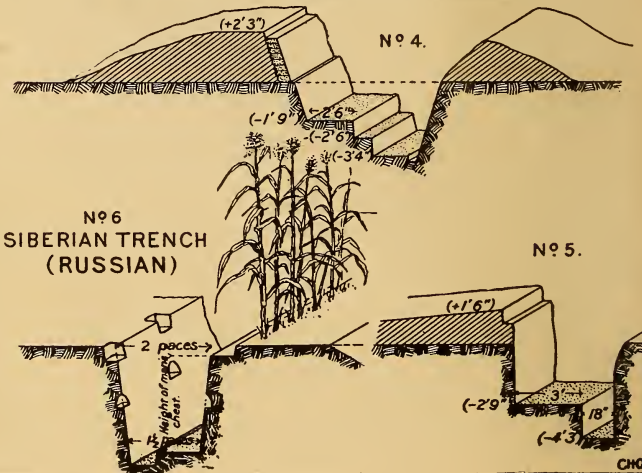
## TYPES OF RUSSIAN TRENCHES AT NANSHAN. SHOWING HIGH EMBANKMENTS.



## LOW EMBANKMENT TYPE OF RUSSIAN TRENCH



## TYPES OF JAPANESE TRENCHES.





They should be laid with one end on the embankment, the other resting on the ground in rear of the trench or upon stones or other objects as shown, and then covered with 3 or 4 inches of earth. This defense, while not proof against bursting shells, will protect the men from dropping bullets and shrapnel fragments. (Fig. 4.)

**38.—Concealment of shelter trenches.** Endeavor should *always* be made to disguise the location of shelter trenches by covering the sides toward the enemy with branches, weeds, sod, etc., and by avoiding proximity to well-defined natural features, such as roads or hedges.\*

**39.—The advantages and disadvantages of the shelters for men lying and kneeling may be briefly summarized as follows:**  
*Advantages.*

(1) They present but little difficulty to the advance of the defenders' cavalry or artillery over them, and are easily surmounted by the occupants when the advance is ordered.

(2) They will stop rifle bullets.

(3) They offer but a small target to the enemy's artillery fire.

(4) They are quickly and easily made.

*Disadvantages.*

(1) Shelter lying offers little or no protection from shrapnel fire.

(2) The embankments being low, the field of fire may be limited by small folds in the ground (care in selecting their position may partially remedy this disadvantage).

\*In earlier Russian practice in the war in Manchuria little attempt was made at concealment of shelter trenches, they being quite conspicuous, even at great distances; from Liaoyang, however, the attempt at concealment was quite apparent, even the profiles being modified to assist in this attempt; the adoption of lower command and gentler slopes is apparent when comparing the profiles of Nanshan Hill with those of Liaoyang. (See Plate 3A.)

Bomb- and splinter-proofs of usual form were largely used by the Russians either in the trenches or in rear with covered communications leading to them.

# PLATE 4.

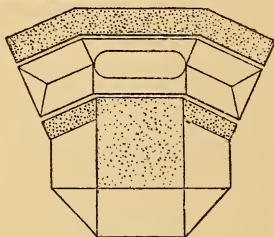


FIGURE 1

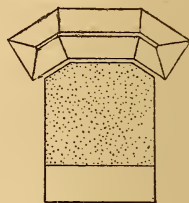
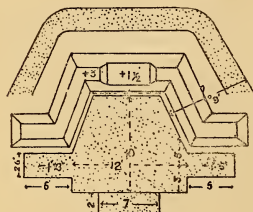


FIGURE 2.



(3) In wet weather they may become untenable by reason of mud.

40.—Loop-holes may be provided by half imbedding *head-logs* in the embankment, or resting them on sand-bags on top of it, and leaving spaces beneath for the rifle. Or the loop-hole may be formed with four *sand-bags*, as shown in Fig. 7. *Brushwood* may also be used with an earth cover, either alone or in connection with a head-log, as shown in Fig. 6. A form of artificial loop-hole and "shelter lying" is shown in Fig. 8.

Loop-holes for rifles splay inward, for field guns, outward.

The best practice is not to use *head-logs* or *loop-holes* (unless in case of an inferior force acting solely on the defensive), as their use impels men to hesitate to leave cover when the advance is ordered.\*

40a.—Cover for guns may be obtained in two ways.

(1) By means of *Gun Pits*; made by digging a hole of a size sufficient to partially conceal the gun and gun detachment, and forming an embankment in front with the excavated earth. (Pl. 4, Figs. 1, 2, and 3).\*

(2) By means of *Gun Epaulements*; made by constructing an embankment in front of the gun which rests on the natural surface of the ground. In this form the gun detachment would be partially sheltered in the pits from which the earth for the embankment is taken. (Figs. 4 and 5.)

Circumstances would control the selection of the kind of cover, if any, for field guns. The disadvantages of gun pits are the same as those of shelter trenches, but pits give more complete protection to the gun. (See par. 153.)

---

\*The Russian infantry trench near the top of 203-Meter Hill in the siege of Port Arthur was constructed with a thick cover of earth resting on heavy timbers and plate iron, its defenders firing through horizontal slits; machine guns at intervals commanding the approaches. It was not until this trench was practically destroyed by artillery fire that the assaults were successful.

\*\*Figs. 1, 2, and 4, Pl. 4, are from U. S. Artillery Drill Regulations. A type of Japanese gun epaulement used in Manchuria is shown on Plate 4A.

PLATE 4 A.

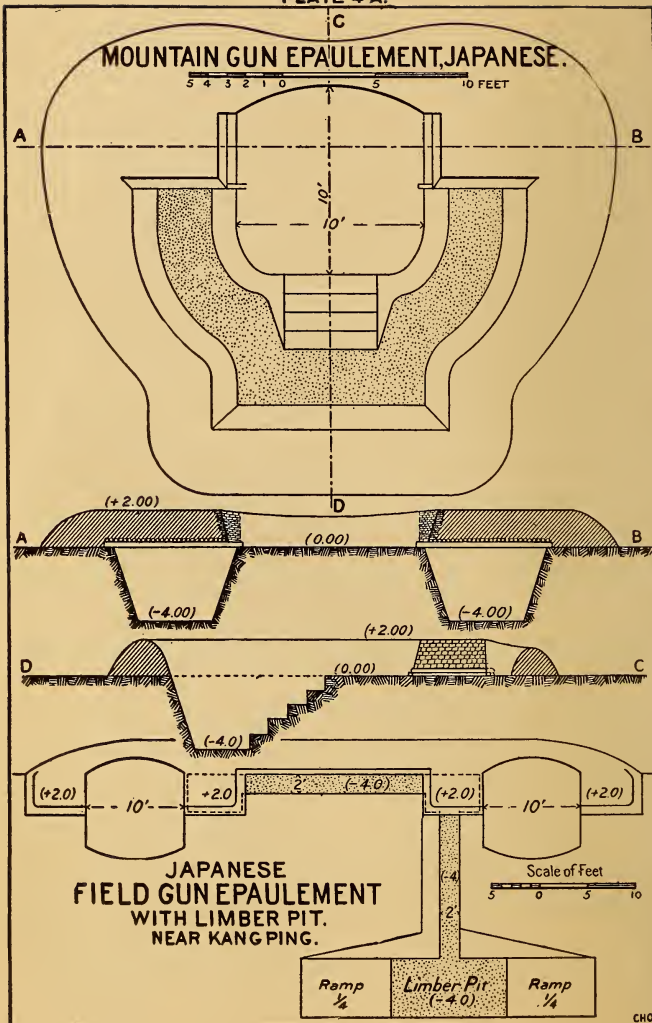
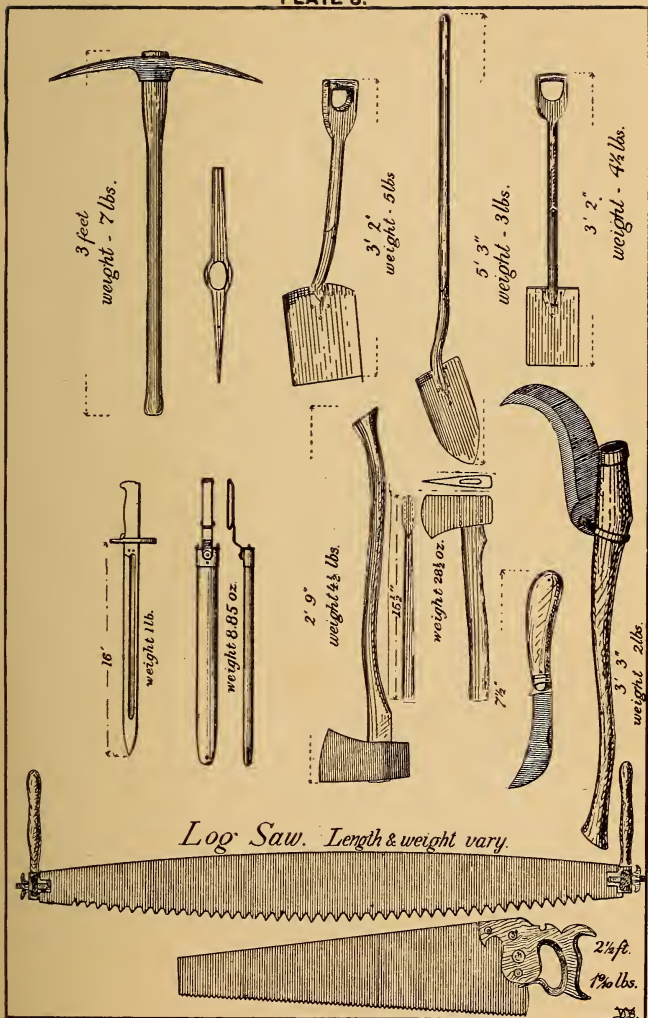


PLATE 6.



## CHAPTER V.—Clearing the Ground.

41.—The tools more especially used in the field may be divided into two classes.

(1) **Intrenching tools**, such as the pick, the pick mattock, the long- and the short-handled shovel, the spade, and the intrenching shovel.

(2) **Cutting tools**, such as the ax, the hand ax, the log saw, the hand saw, the linked felling saw, the gabion knife (pruning knife), the knife bayonet, the machete, the bush hook, and the wire cutter. (Pl. 5 and 6.)

42.—The choice of a defensive position in which the foreground is free from obstructions and favorable to the defenders' fire is of the utmost importance: more or less clearing, however, will usually be necessary. Clearing must be systematically done, and, as in all other work, should be undertaken by complete organizations or parts of organizations under their own officers.

43.—The extent (theoretical) to which the foreground should be cleared is equal to the effective range of the defenders' weapons. Practically, as wide a space within this limit, is to be cleared, as is consistent with the time and labor available. Brushwood and standing timber most often screen the enemy's advance and steps should be taken to remove them.

44.—The tools usually employed in felling heavy timber are the ax and the log saw, the former being the most common, although inexperienced men acquire familiarity with the latter more quickly. When using the ax the cut should be commenced on the side toward which it is desired the tree should fall, ropes being used to incline it in that direction, if necessary; if immaterial which way the tree falls, then attack it on the side toward which



it leans; after cutting it a little more than half through change over to the other side and commencing about six inches higher up, cut until it falls. In using the saw it may be necessary to wedge the cut or use other means in order to keep the saw free: the teeth should be set wide.

Both saw and ax may be used, in which case the ax should be used on the side toward which the tree is to fall and the saw on the other side. (Pl. 6.)

**45.—Trees** would ordinarily be cut within a foot of the ground because a greater height would afford cover. A man should cut down a hard wood tree 1 ft. in diameter in 10 minutes and one of soft wood of the same size in one-third the time. The hand ax, hand saw, and knife bayonet are useful in felling small trees, ropes being attached to bend them, and the cut being made on the convex side.

Felled timber must be removed, if of such a size as to afford shelter to the enemy. It is utilized in making field casemates, magazines, etc.

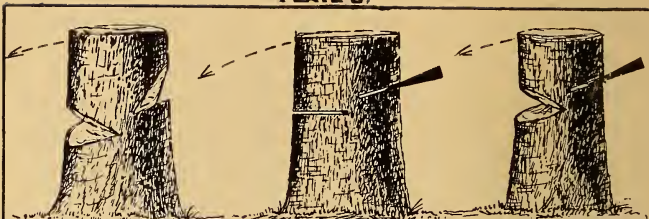
**46.—Brushwood** can be cleared at the rate of about 12 sq. yards per man per hour. The men should be extended at about 4 paces interval, using the bush hook, hatchet, or hand ax, together with the gabion knife, the machete, or the knife bayonet.

**47.—Grain, grass, or weeds** must be trampled by men in line, mowed, or burnt.

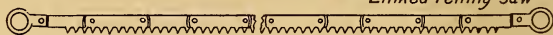
**48.—Hedges, fences, and walls**, if not perpendicular to the front, must be removed. Live hedges should be pulled to one side in order to give the axmen greater freedom. (Pl. 6.) Fences can ordinarily be demolished with axes, walls by battering them down or blowing them down with explosives. (Chapter XX.)

**Buildings** may be battered down, burned, or demolished by explosives according to circumstances. In the case of buildings and walls it will usually be necessary to remove the debris, which can be used for filling hollows.

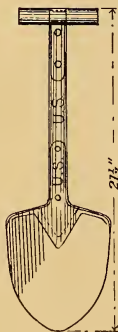
PLATE 6.



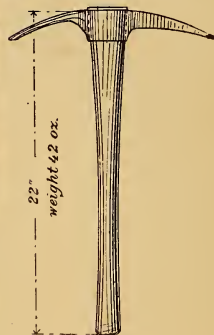
Wire Cutter.



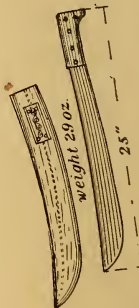
Linked felling saw



21½"  
weight 30 oz.



22"  
weight 42 oz.



weight 29 oz.  
25"

Intr trenching shovel.

Pick Mattock.

Machete.



# PLATE 7.

Figure 1.



Figure 2.



Figure 3.



Figure 4.



Figure 5



Figure 6

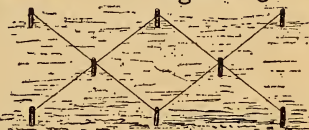


Figure 7.

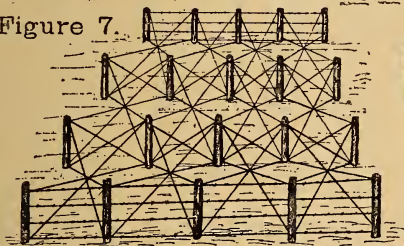


Figure 8.

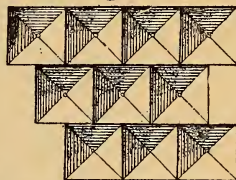


Figure 9.

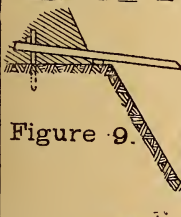


Figure 10.

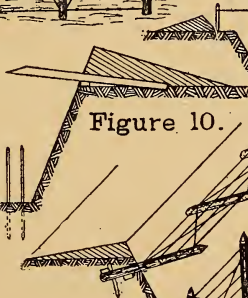


Figure 11.



Figure 12.

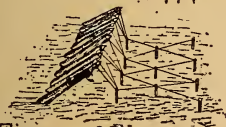
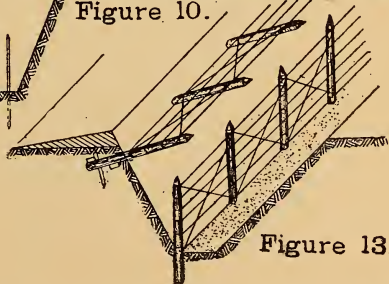


Figure 13.



## CHAPTER VI.—Obstacles.

49.—Obstacles have for their object the checking and breaking up of the enemy's advance when so close to the defenders' position that the shrapnel fire of the former has ceased, thus permitting full fire effect from the defense.\*

(1) They must be within the effective zone of the defenders' fire and must be so arranged as to offer the least obstacle possible to an advance from the side of the defense.

(2) They must be concealed as far as possible from the view of the assaulting party, so that they may come upon them as a surprise.

(3) They must be difficult of removal under fire, and, if possible, should be of such construction as will necessitate the use of tools not usually carried by troops.\*\*

\*Buynitzki gives the following figures for artillery firing over its own infantry, it being assumed that the trajectory must pass at least 43 yards above the heads of the men:

	Range.	Permissible Approach of Infantry to Target.
New Russian Field Gun.. . . .	1860 to 2190 yds.	831 yds.
New French Field Gun.. . . .	2190 yds.	705 yds.
New Krupp Field Gun.. . . .	2190 yds.	705 yds.
German Field Gun (model 1891)	2190 yds.	600 yds.
<i>Note.</i> —For the new 3" U. S. Field Gun.. . . .		
	2190 yds.	634 yds.

This data is useful as indicating probable distances beyond which obstacles would be valueless in front of infantry trenches.

\*\*For passing obstacles one or more of the following methods may be used. (For destruction of obstacles, see Par. 453.)

1. By covering the obstacle with any convenient material, as straw, hurdles, fascines, etc.
2. By bridging with specially prepared ladders having broad foot-pieces a pace apart.
3. By removing the obstacle by hand with axes, wire cutters, and other tools.
4. By passing them without previous preparation (lines of obstacles 5 yards in depth, consisting of wire entanglements, palisades, and small pits, have at drill been passed thus by men in extended order in three or four minutes).

(4) They should, if possible, be so placed as to be secure from the fire of the enemy's artillery, and so constructed that, if struck by his projectiles, they will suffer small damage.

(5) They must offer no shelter to the enemy.

50.—**Abatis**, on account of the ease with which it can be constructed, is the obstacle most used.

It consists of branches of trees about 15 feet long, laid on the ground, butts pointing to the rear, all small twigs being cut off, and all large branches pointed and interlaced. The abatis should be 5 feet high.

The branches are secured to the ground by forks, wire, or by logs laid over the butts of the branches. The use of wire to hold down the branches is recommended, and when used should be also passed from branch to branch so as to form an additional entanglement. When more than one row of abatis is used the branches of one row overlap the butts of the next one in front. (Pl. 7, Figs. 1 and 2.)

The abatis most easy of construction is that made by felling trees towards the enemy in such manner as to leave the fallen part still attached to the stump; the branches are then pointed as described before. (Fig 5.) This is called *slashing*.\*

51.—**Abatis\*\*** is often placed in the front works when the ditch is so shallow as to present little or no obstacle to an assault. When so used they are placed upright and well tamped in. In all cases, especially when small branches are used, it is better to sink

---

\*A fairly effective substitute for "slashing" was improvised by the Russians in front of Liaoyang by utilizing standing kow-liang stalks, which they broke over about 2 feet above the ground; this expedient was used for a distance of 500 to 600 yards in front of the Russian trenches, and made a fairly effective obstacle.

\*\*This class of obstacle was sparingly used in the war in Manchuria by reason of the scarcity of timber.

the butts in triangular pits, and, when the branches are in place, fill in with earth and tamp well. (Figs. 3 and 4.)

In all cases where exposed to artillery fire a glacis should be constructed in front of an abatis, so as to protect it from injury.

52.—**Low Wire entanglements\*** are formed by driving into the ground stakes projecting about 18 in. The stakes should be driven in rows about 6 feet apart, the stakes in each row being opposite intervals in adjacent rows. The heads of the stakes are connected by stout wire wound around them. To make this more effective, do not clear the ground, but allow bushes, brush, etc., to remain in place. (Fig. 6.) Use 1 ft. of wire to 1 sq. foot of ground covered.

53.—**High Wire entanglements** are constructed in the same manner, except that the stakes should be at least 4 ft. high, and placed 6 to 8 feet apart. The head of each stake is connected with the foot of the stake diagonally opposite, the line of posts in front and rear being finished off as fence panels with barbed wire. The use of barbed wire is not advised for the interior crossed work on account of the danger and difficulty in working with it.

Roughly, 1 yard of wire is necessary for each square foot of entanglement. Ten men can make about 9 square yards of this entanglement in one hour. This work does not require trained men. Wire entanglement, either high or low, is useful on the glacis of field works, as it holds the attacker under fire at the most favorable point. (Fig. 7.)

54.—**Palisades** consist of rows of trunks of trees or of squared trunks, 8 or 10 feet high, planted close together and pointed on

---

\*A useful modification of the low wire entanglement is made as follows: by means of fence staples fasten barbed wire near the sharpened ends of the stakes, allowing 5 feet of slack wire between stakes; then drive the stakes until the tops are flush with the ground, and there results a serious obstacle in the form of a loose network of wire, but slightly visible and very difficult of removal.

# PLATE 8.

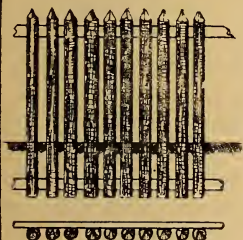


Figure 1.

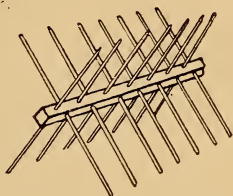


Figure 2.

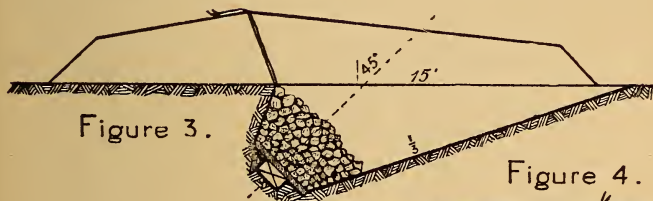


Figure 3.

Figure 4.

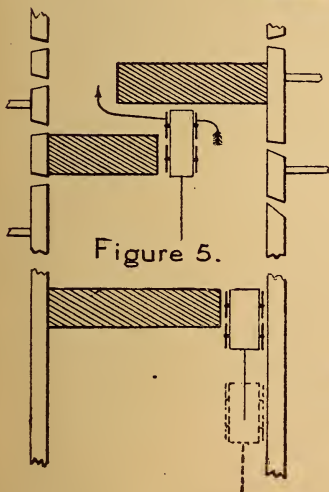


Figure 5.

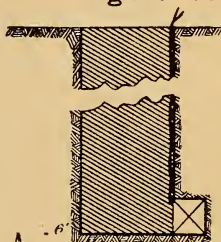
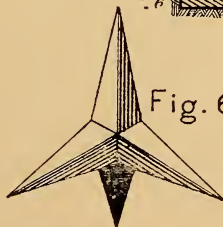


Fig. 6.





top. When material is at hand, ribband pieces should be spiked on the inside along their tops about a foot or two below the points to hold them steady. They are used to advantage in the bottoms of ditches or to close the gorge of field works. (Pl. 8, Fig. 1.)

55.—*Fraises* are palisades arranged horizontally or much inclined and are often used at the foot of the exterior slope and at the top of the counterscarp; in the first position they point down and in the second upward. In each case, the ribband or strip is spiked on underneath and laid against the ground near the edge of scarp or counterscarp, as the case may be, another one being spiked to the inner end of the fraise on top; thus the outer ones give good bearing surfaces and do not break up the crest, and the inner one gives a bearing for staking and tying down. The slopes described above are given so that unexploded shell will always roll away from the parapet. (Pl. 7, Figs. 9, 10 and 13.)

*Fraises* may with advantage be made of barbed wire in the form shown, care being taken that all wire when finished is on top of the wooden supports. The advantage of this variety of fraise is that it is little damaged by artillery fire and is very difficult of removal. (Pl. 7, Fig. 13.)

When time is pressing *fraises* may be made of branches of trees with the butts well sunken and staked down. (Pl. 7, Fig. 12.)

56.—*Crows' feet*, *Chevaux-de-frise*, and *planks full of spikes* have been used in the past as obstacles to an advance, but the two former are not now issued for use in our service, and the latter is one not easily made in the field. Such obstacles require much time and material in their construction and are not treated of here, as they do not fall properly in the domain of Field Engineering; their value in any event is not commensurate with the difficulty of their preparation. (Pl. 8, Figs. 2 and 6.)

57.—Small Pits or *troupe de loup* are square on the top, 3 feet on a side, and are pyramidal in shape; they are 2 ft. 6 in. deep, and have a pointed picket driven in the center of each.

In digging these pits a glacis should be formed in front of the row nearest the enemy, and, to avoid filling the pits with earth thrown from the others, the row farthest from the glacis should be commenced first. One man can make 10 pits per day in easy soil. (Pl. 7, Figs. 8 and 11.)

Small pits may be surmounted by a low wire entanglement, making a very serious obstacle.\*

58.—Fords may be made impassable by strewing them with harrows, points up.

59.—A Fougass is a mine so arranged that upon explosion a large mass of stones or shells are projected towards the enemy.\*\* (Pl. 8, Fig. 3.)

To make a fougass, dig a hole in the shape of a frustum of a cone, inclining the axis in the direction of the enemy, so as to make an angle with the horizon of about 45 degrees. The sides

---

\*The Russians in the late war showed a decided predilection for the deep pit, each pit being conical in form, 6 feet across the top, 6 feet deep, and having its sharpened stake at the bottom.

The four rows of deep military pits which the Second and Fourth Japanese Armies faced at Liaoyang extended along the Russian front for a distance of over four miles. They seem to have been hardly formidable enough, however, to have compensated for the enormous amount of labor expended in their construction, since they were merely covered with plain (not barbed) low wire entanglement, which was easily removed.

\*\*The stone fougass was used by the Russians in the late war, notably at the eastern end of Shousanpu Ridge, where a number appear to have been fired with some success. A military observer, with respect to the fougasses used in Manchuria, remarks that the moral effect or the dread of them was out of all proportion to any damage they ever did.

should splay outwards at an inclination of 12 degrees from the axis. The powder charge is placed in the bottom of the hole—preferably in a box—and in front of this a platform of wood about 3 inches in thickness: on this are piled stones, brick, etc. The mine is exploded by means of electricity or common fuse. Care must be taken in digging the hole for the fougass that the line of least resistance is in all cases in the axis of the hole; *to be sure of this, throw the excavated earth upon the crest towards the defenders' side* and ram well, allowing earth to enclose the sides of the excavation in the manner shown in cut.

Fougasses are useful in defending boat-landings, roads, etc.

The following empirical formula may be taken for determining the charge of powder for fougasses:  $P = \frac{s}{150}$ , in which P and s represent the weight in pounds of the powder and stone.

When broken up, a cubic foot of limestone weighs 96 lbs.

**60.—Land Mines** are small mines placed in the line of advance of the enemy and exploded either by electricity or fuse from the defense.\* The small mines are made by digging holes from 2 to 3 yards deep, placing the charge in a box in a recess excavated in one side of the hole, and refilling with the excavated earth, tamping well. The wires are carried back in a small trench to the work. In common earth, the charge for 2 yards deep is about 25 lbs., and for 3 yards deep about 80 lbs.; the diameter of the crater formed will be about twice the depth of charge. (Pl. 8, Fig. 4.)

\*\*To determine the quantity of explosive necessary for use in a "common" mine, multiply eleven-sixths of the cube of the line of least resistance in yards by the quantity of explosive required to throw out one cubic yard.

---

\*Land mines were used in considerable numbers by the Russians on the approaches to 203-Meter Hill at Port Arthur.

\*\*Military Land Mines," Mercur.



Quantity of gunpowder necessary to throw out a cubic yard of material (Macaulay):

	Pounds.	Ounces.
Light sandy earth.....	1	13
Hard sand.....	2	
Fat earth mixed with sand and gravel.....	1	10
Wet sand.....	2	2
Earth mixed with stone.....	2	4
Clay with tufa.....	2	8
Fat earth mixed with pebbles.....	2	12
Rock.....	3	10
New brickwork or masonry.....	2	2
Inferior brickwork or masonry.....	2	11
Good new brickwork or masonry.....	3	10
Good old brickwork or masonry.....	4	11

The following formula gives the relation between the charge for common and overcharged or undercharged mines:

$$C' = C \left( \frac{7}{8} \frac{r}{L} + \frac{1}{8} \right)^3;$$

$C$  = charge for common mine (lbs.);

$r$  = radius of crater;

$C'$  = charge for undercharged or overcharged mines (lbs.);

$L$  = length of line of least resistance.

The following formulæ give charges for common mines:

With explosive gelatine,

$$C = 1.17 (L + \frac{7}{8} (r - L))^3;$$

With gunpowder,

$$C = 1.10 (L + \frac{7}{8} (r - L))^3;$$

$C$  = charge in pounds;

$r$  = crater radius in feet;

$L$  = line of least resistance in feet.

In common mines,

$$L = r.$$

61.—Barricades are used to prevent the passage of the enemy through roads, streets, and defiles generally.

They may be made of any material at hand, paving stones, overturned carts, barrels filled with earth, stones, and articles of like nature. They should be built so that a passage is always left for the defenders, but means should be at hand to close the opening quickly—a wagon may be used for this purpose, being drawn away from the opening when a passage is desired.

The houses on either side should be loop-holed and used to flank the defense. Overturned wagons, broken furniture and debris from the adjacent houses make a very good *obstacle* and should be placed in front of the barricade to ward off cavalry charges. (Pl. 8, Fig. 5.)

# PLATE.9.

Figure 1.

Figure

4.

Figure 3.

Figure 2

Figure 5.

## CHAPTER VII.—Field Works.

62.—When a position is to be held for a considerable period and when time is available, more deliberate defenses than the Hasty or Battle Intrenchments (Chapter IV.) are constructed. These are known as *Field Works* and usually require a minimum of 6 hours for construction. The conditions to be fulfilled, besides those necessary for a defensive position (Chapter I.), are

(1) That they must afford protection against both rifle and artillery fire.

(2) That they must be of suitable size for the garrison that is to occupy them.

(3) That they should have suitably constructed casemates to shelter the garrison at night.

Field works may be constructed for the defense of a single object, as a bridge, a ford, etc., or they may occupy the key points in a long line of defense, in which case they should be located so as to afford mutual protection, the intervening space either being left open or occupied by shelter trenches.

Before proceeding to the study of Field Works, a brief synopsis of the technical terms used in connection with them will be necessary.

63.—A **Parapet** is a bank of earth thrown up to cover the defenders while firing.

64.—The **Trace** of a work is its outline in plan: the term is often applied to the horizontal projection of its interior crest. (Pl. 9, Fig. 1.)

65.—The **Profile** is a cross-section of the work made by a plane perpendicular to the interior crest. (Fig. 2.)

In the profile, the various parts are named as follows:

- |                     |                    |                              |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| a. Banquette slope. | e. Exterior slope. | D. Ditch.                    |
| b. Banquette tread. | f. Berm.           | i. Interior slope of glacis. |
| c. Interior slope.  | g. Escarp.         | k. Glacis.                   |
| d. Superior slope.  | h. Counterscarp.   | t. Trench.                   |

66.—The **Interior Crest** is the intersection of the Interior and Superior slopes: sometimes called the magistral line. ("a" Fig. 1.)

67.—The **Exterior Crest**—that of the Superior and Exterior slopes. ("b" Fig. 1.) The thickness of parapet is the horizontal distance between interior and exterior crests.

68.—A **Traverse** is a bank of earth inside a work to protect some portion of it from direct fire. When the protection afforded is from reverse fire, the traverse is sometimes called a **Parados**. (Figs. 3 and 4.)

69.—An **Embrasure** is a revetted opening in the parapet, through which field guns may fire. It is said to be Direct or Oblique according to whether its axis is perpendicular or inclined to the line of parapet.

70.—A **Gun Bank** is a raised mound, by means of which field guns may fire over the parapet. Guns thus placed are said to be *en barbette*.

The relative advantages of Embrasures and Gun Banks are as follows:—

Embrasures afford greater protection to the gunners, but

(a) They afford a very limited field of fire.

(b) They weaken the parapet and require frequent repairs.

(c) The place of the gun when not in action cannot well be used by Infantry.

The conditions as to Gun Banks are the converse in each case.

71.—The **Command** of a work is the height of its interior crest above the ground on which it is constructed. ("m" Fig. 2.)

72.—Its Relief is the height above the bottom of the ditch. ("o" Fig. 2.)

73.—The Plane of Site is a plane tangent to the ground on which the work is constructed.

74.—The Terreplein is the surface of the ground inside the work and does not, of necessity, coincide with the plane of site; since the whole interior of the work—*i. e.*, the terreplein—may be lowered for the purpose of securing more cover.

When the banquette tread is more than 2 feet above the terreplein, its slope may be stepped with fascines or planks: this has the advantage of giving more interior space, but tends to produce confusion on the part of the defenders, especially in a night assault.

75.—The interior slope is usually made as steep, up to four on one, as the revetment will stand.

76.—The superior slope is necessary in order to secure the best fire effect on the ground immediately in front of the work. It weakens the parapet near the interior crest, however, and this defect increases as the slope is made steeper; hence, it should be as slight as is consistent with good fire effect.

The degree of this slope is regulated by the principle that fire from rifles resting on its surface should not pass more than three feet above the glacis, or, when there is no glacis, above the outer edge of the ditch. It will thus depend on

- (1) The command of the work.
- (2) The inclination of the plane of site.
- (3) The distance from the interior crest to outer edge of ditch.

The slope should not exceed one on four; one on six (normal) is better, and then, if necessary, make a glacis of the requisite height.

77.—The exterior slope should be as gentle as two on three, if

possible, owing to the fact that steeper slopes are soon destroyed by artillery fire.

78.—The Berm may be as great as 6 ft. in width; ordinarily it would not be greater than 2 ft., while in favorable soil none may be left at all.

Advantages of berm:

(1) It relieves the edge of the ditch from the weight of the parapet and thus prevents caving, in loose soil.

(2) It enables the parapet to be thickened.

Disadvantages:

(1) It affords a footing in an assault. (This, however, may be partially remedied by use of obstacles.)

79.—The slope of the escarp and counterscarp should be equal to or greater than the exterior slope, the counterscarp being as steep as the earth will stand.

80.—The Glacis should be parallel to the superior slope, in order to get the best fire effect from the crest.

81.—If the parapet does not require much earth, and the ditch is required as an obstacle, it may be made triangular in cross-section. This form gives the greatest depth and prevents the assailants from forming in the ditch, but it is difficult of construction. Eight feet may be taken as the extreme depth of ditch and twelve feet as the extreme height of parapet. The width of the ditch varies with the amount of earth required—12 ft. at the top being a minimum.

A parapet with trench and ditch affords cover in the shortest time possible: each foot of depth in the trench means 2 ft. of cover, plus the additional protection afforded by the earth from the ditch.

A parapet with ditch alone affords greater cover to the ground in rear and better command of ground in front, but its height makes it more conspicuous and hence more objectionable.



82.—Referring to traces of various works (Pl. 9, Fig. 5)—

a, is a salient angle.

a' is a shoulder angle.

b, is a reëntrant angle.

c, c, c, are faces.

e, e, is the gorge.

d, d, d, are flanks.

f, is the capital.

83.—Field Works are classified with reference to their trace, as

(1) **Open**, which have thick parapets on exposed sides, the rear or gorge being open.

(2) **Closed**, in which the thick parapet is continuous.

(3) **Half-Closed**, which only differ from the "open" in that the gorge is closed by obstacles, stockade work, or shelter trenches.

Advanced works within rifle range of the main defensive line, as well as those in positions where the flanks are secure (as a bridge head), should usually be "open." Works in main line and advanced works beyond rifle range should be "half-closed"; those in isolated positions or on the flanks of a defensive line—"closed."

Open works have the advantage over closed, of affording greater freedom of movement to the defenders, and, in the event of capture, of being exposed to fire and assault from the works in rear.

Closed works, while affording greater protection from assault, are liable to have their parapets exposed to enfilade or reverse fire, besides which the available interior space is much reduced.

84.—**Forts and Redoubts** (Closed Works) are distinguished by the former having reëntering angles, thus affording defense of the ditch from the parapet, both conditions being lacking in redoubts.

Redoubts, as compared to forts, are of simpler trace, do not require so large a garrison, and afford better frontal fire; but, as they have no ditch defense (unless caponiers and counterscarp galleries or some arrangement such as is shown at the extrem-



# PLATE 10.

Fig.1.

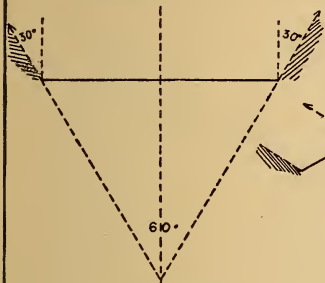


Fig.2.

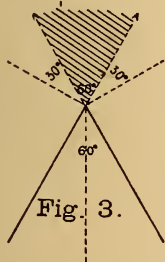
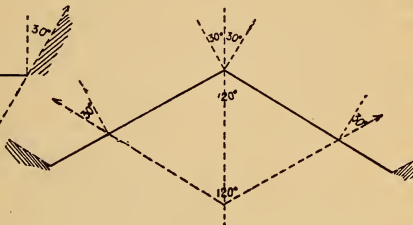


Fig. 3.



Fig.4.



Fig.5.

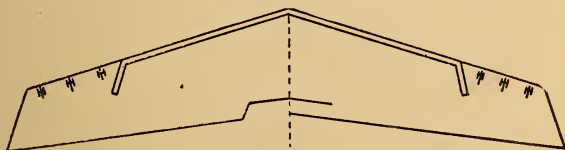
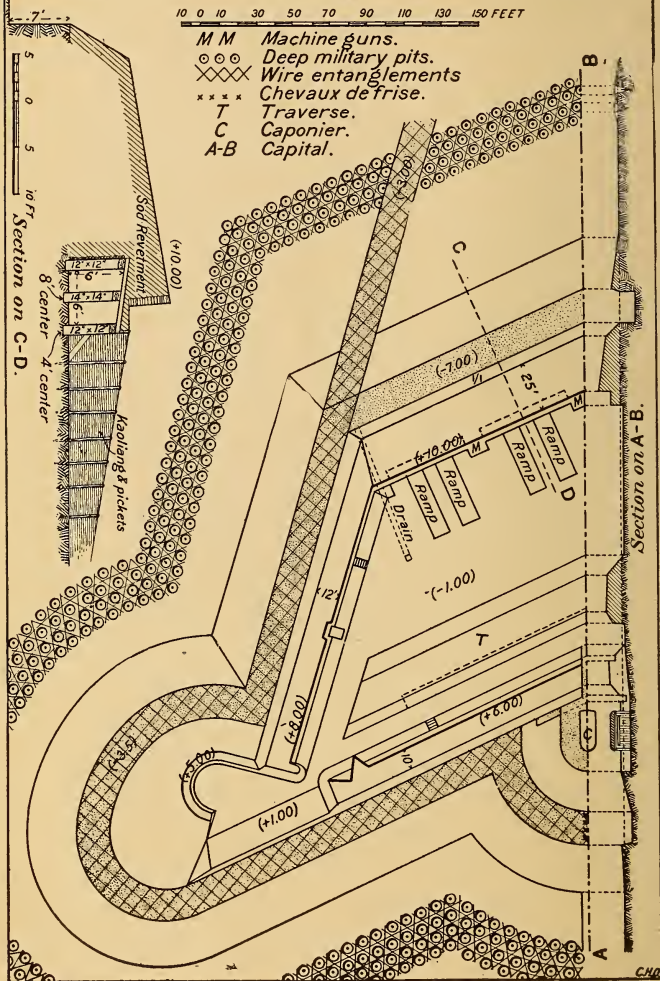
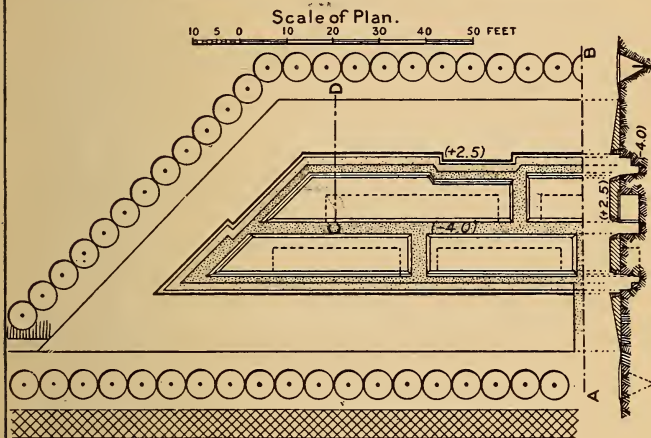


Fig.6.

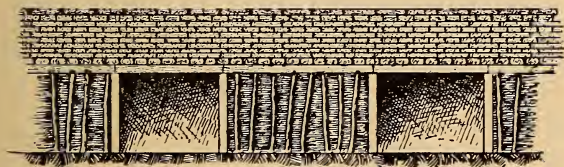
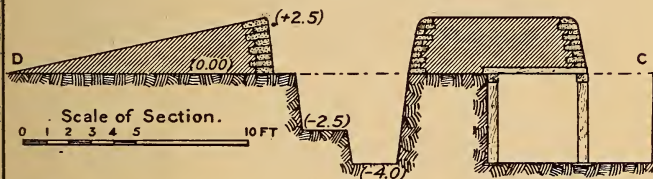
# HALF OF RUSSIAN REDOUBT, LIAOYANG.



# *HALF RUSSIAN REDOUBT* *NEAR SHANLANTZU IN VICINITY OF PUTILOFF HILL.*

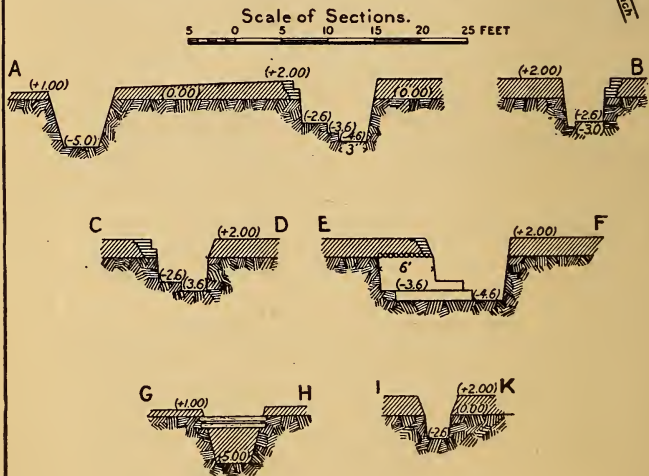
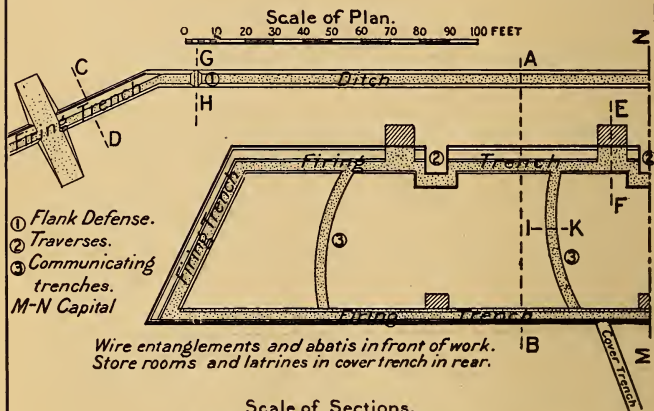


*Section on C-D.*



*Casemated Traverse.*

# HALF OF JAPANESE FIELD REDOUBT NEAR KANGPING.



ity of the flank in the field work represented in Plate 10A, are constructed), they should be traced to support one another.\*

85.—With respect to caponiers (Pl. 20) and counterscarp galleries—the former, if sunken, as is usually necessary for protection against artillery fire, may become untenable in rainy weather, while communication with the latter is difficult and may, by the

\*Two types of redoubt were used by the Russians on their inner lines of defense at Liaoyang. The larger redoubt (Plate 10A), a lunette with a broken gorge, was constructed just east of the railway and was so traced as to afford defense of its flank ditches. The face ditches were not flanked, but the gorge ditch was provided with a caponier "c." Protection at the gorge parapet from reverse fire was provided by a large traverse "T" inside the work. Bomb-proofs were provided under the face parapets and beneath the interior traverse. The parapet of this redoubt had a command of 10 feet, while the terreplein was lowered 1 foot.

Obstacles outside consisted of four rows of deep military pits with a low wire entanglement on top entirely surrounding the work. The gorge and flank ditches were provided with wire entanglements, those in the flank ditches being prolonged in shallower ditches to a salient as shown in the cut. This type of redoubt was very strong, but the height (10 feet) of its parapets above the surrounding plain was objectionable.

The other and later type of Russian redoubt was very shallow, with a flat profile; an example (that of one near Putiloff Hill) being shown in trace and profile in Plate 10B. This type afforded good cover, offered a smaller target for hostile artillery and permitted a stronger frontal fire for the infantry defense.

The Russian redoubt near Putiloff Hill above mentioned and the Japanese redoubt constructed at Kangping (Pl. 10C) afford striking examples of the best modern practice in securing flat profiles, shallow works, bomb-proofs, ditch defense, and communicating trenches.

In comparing and contrasting the foregoing types it should be noted:

- (a) That neither makes provision for gun emplacements, the artillery being located in the line of trenches connecting the redoubts or preferably in a position in rear of the line. (See Par. 151, also Pl. 21, Fig. 6.)
- (b) That the disadvantage in field works formerly inseparable from short flanks, by reason of the difficulty in covering intervening ground, is compensated for by using machine guns in those portions of the works, thus permitting shallower works, which are less vulnerable to artillery fire. (See Par. 89.)
- (c) That works of the second type permit lower parapets with a sufficient interior protection, and are much easier of construction.



enemy, be rendered impossible. The objections to these forms of ditch defense are so great, and their use so limited, where proper frontal fire and obstacles are possible, that their construction is seldom necessary.

**86.—The Sector of Fire** is a term used to designate the angular space in front of a work which is swept by its fire ( $30^{\circ}$  on each side of a perpendicular being considered the limit of oblique rifle fire.) Thus, a straight line of parapet has a sector of fire of  $60^{\circ}$  (Pl. 10, Fig. 1), while, in a redan, it varies with the angle at the salient. With a salient of  $120^{\circ}$ , the sector of fire is evidently  $120^{\circ}$  (Fig. 2); with a  $60^{\circ}$  salient, there will be an undefended space of  $60^{\circ}$ . (Fig. 3.) This undefended space may be done away with by blunting the redan. (Fig. 4.) A redan with shoulder angles (Fig. 5) furnishes a ditch defense in front of the shoulders and does away with part of the dead space in front of the salient, but it is difficult of construction and is not usually resorted to.

**87.—**For reasons given in Chapter XI., it is often desirable to place the guns outside the work; in which case some plan like Fig. 6 may be adopted, the single line representing a shelter trench.

**88.—Defilade of Field Works.** In order that Field Works may fulfill the condition of screening the occupants from the fire and view of an enemy, the problem of defilade arises.

This may be defined as the operation of regulating the direction and command of the earth cover so that the interior of the work is protected from the direct fire of an enemy.

The problem resolves itself into two distinct parts—

- (1) *Defilading in plan.\**
- (2) *Defilading in section.*

---

\*The best modern practice, due probably to the searching effect of field artillery, tends toward more careful defilading in plan with a view to securing shallow works with low parapets; protection to the occupants is dependent upon deep trenches and field casements opening into them, rather than upon defilading the entire interior of the work by raising the parapets.

89.—*Defilading in plan.* This involves the selection of the trace of the work (its position having been previously chosen). The trace will vary with the plane of site, the terrain in the immediate vicinity, the proximity of high ground that the enemy may occupy, and the time available for construction. A plane of site sloping to the rear is obviously the easiest to defilade, and one sloping toward the enemy the most difficult. Salients should occupy commanding ground, the lower portion being taken for the reëntrants or for the gorge. The longer faces of a work should lie in the direction of lower or inaccessible ground, so that they cannot be enfiladed.

With commanding ground in front, the work is more difficult to defilade in proportion to its depth; therefore, have longer faces opposed to the high ground and make the work as shallow as is consistent with other conditions.

As a rule, the longer faces of a work must lie so that the defenders can bring as direct a fire as possible in the direction of expected attack.

All the foregoing conditions as to defilading in plan cannot, in the usual case, be satisfied, but the object to be attained must be kept constantly in view, and, in selecting the trace for a work, an officer's ability will be shown by the skill with which he harmonizes the various diverse requirements.

After the careful selection of the trace, as already indicated, and marking it by pickets, the problem is completed by defilading the proposed work in section.

90.—*Defilading in section.* With a horizontal site and only level ground toward the enemy, a constant command of 8 ft. is sufficient to protect the whole interior of the work.

On an irregular site, or when necessary to place a work in a position commanded by higher accessible ground, the necessary protection of 8 ft. may be attained in one of three ways—

Figure 1.



Figure 2.

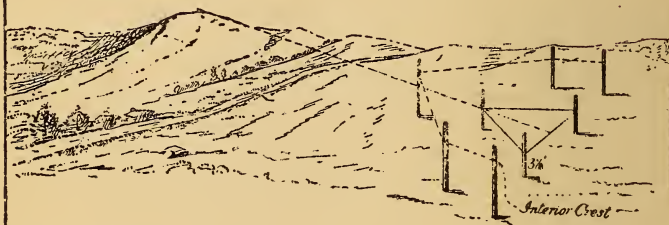


Figure 3.

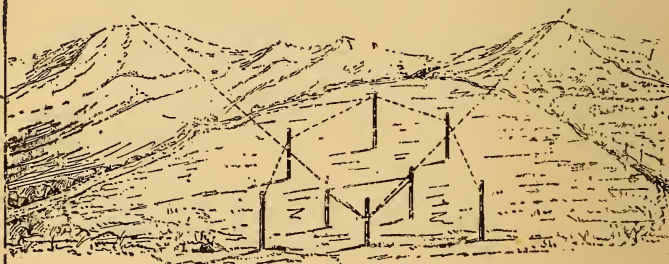


Figure 4.





- (1) By raising a parapet.
- (2) By lowering the terreplein.
- (3) By use of traverses, parados, bonnets, etc.

To determine how much protection is needed, suppose, for example, the proposed work is a lunette. Plant poles at the salients of sufficient length to reach the interior crest of completed work. Place two pickets at the gorge, about 6 ft. apart, one on each side of the capital, and a third 8 ft. to the front. Tie a string to the rear pickets, 3.5 ft. from the ground, the string passing round the third stake. (Pl. 11, Fig. 2.) Taking position behind the horizontal string, have an assistant move the string on the forward picket until it comes into the plane fixed by the eye, the horizontal string and the highest point of the dangerous ground. This plane, which is now established by the string triangle, is called the *tangent plane*. A plane parallel to this and 4.5 ft. above it is known as the *plane of defilade*. (Fig. 1.) The proper height of parapet at the salient and shoulder angles is now fixed by sawing off the poles 4.5 ft. above the points in which the tangent plane cuts them. This will evidently give 8 ft. cover at the gorge, at which point the height of parapet of the flanks is 8 ft.

If it is found that the required height of parapet exceeds 12 ft., the plane of defilade may be lowered not to exceed 1.5 ft. This will still give 6.5 ft. protection at the gorge.

If this proves insufficient, either traverses must be resorted to or the terreplein at the gorge lowered.

91.—To defilade a work from two or more heights, the plane must be tangent to the two heights to which angles of elevation are the greatest. As three points fix a plane, it follows that the tangent plane would usually contain but a single point of the string at the gorge; hence, the problem is solved by reversing the string triangle—*i. e.*, fixing the apex at the gorge 3.5 ft. above the ground, and the two extremities of the base within the proposed

work and far enough apart to allow the two heights to be seen between them. An assistant at each of the forward stakes adjusts the string as directed. (Fig. 3.) The problem is then completed as in the previous case.

92.—It is sometimes advisable, when a single plane of defilade gives too great a command, to use two planes; the portion of the interior of the work on the side toward H (Fig. 4) being defiladed from it, and that on the other side from the height H'. This method exposes the faces and flanks to reverse fire and renders traverses (parados) necessary.

93.—The height of a traverse (which should be such that a shot grazing it will pass 2 ft. above the parapet it is to cover) is found as follows:

Assume that the traverse is to be on the capital of a lunette.

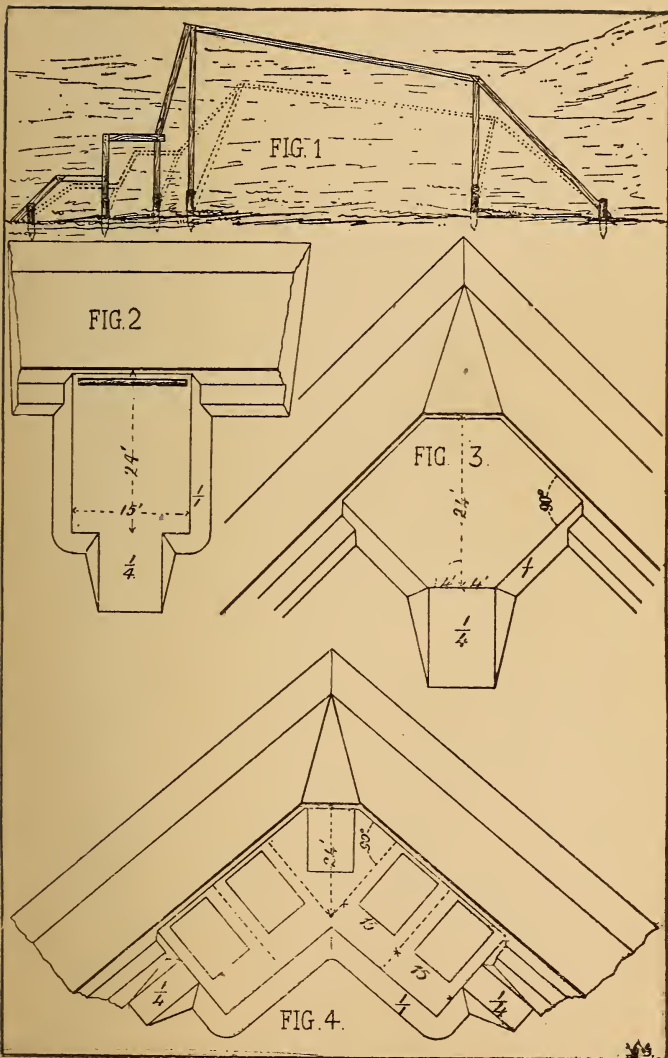
The problem of direct defilade with two planes having been solved, and the poles at angles of the works having been sawed off to indicate the proper height of interior crest in order to defilade the work as far as the capital, the height of traverse to protect a flank from reverse fire is found thus: Measure down from the tops of the poles at the extremities of the flank any convenient distance, as 3 feet,\* mark the points and connect them by a string. This string and the opposite height determine a plane which will cut rods held vertically on the capital, at a distance of 5 feet below the required top of the traverse (2 ft. plus the distance measured down on the poles). Proceed in a similar manner, using the other hill and its opposite flank. The greater of the two results fixes the height of that portion of the traverse. In the same manner, its height to protect the faces from reverse fire may be found. By reference to Fig. 4 this will be readily understood.

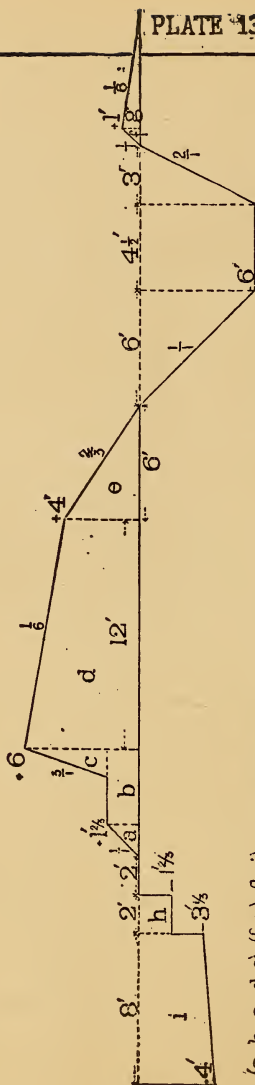
This method, while not absolutely accurate, will give results

---

\*The idea being to have the string behind which the observer stands, when looking towards the height, at about the level of the eye.

PLATE 12.





$$\frac{(a \cdot b \cdot c \cdot d \cdot e) \cdot (f \cdot g) \cdot (h \cdot i)}{6} = \text{mean width of ditch} = W.$$

$$\therefore W = \frac{9}{2} = 4.5$$

$$\text{and } W = \frac{9}{2} = 4.5$$

<i>Parquet</i>	a - 1.39 sq. ft.
	b - 6.57
	c - 3.12
	d - 60.00
	e - 12.00
	<u>83.08</u>

<i>Glacis</i>	f - .50 sq. ft.
	g - 3.00
	<u>3.50</u>

	$\frac{53.92}{6} = 9' = \text{mean width.}$
	$9 + \frac{9}{2} = 13\frac{1}{2} = \text{top width.}$
	$9 - \frac{9}{2} = 4\frac{1}{2} = \text{bottom width.}$

<i>Trench</i>	h - 3.33 sq. ft.
	i - 29.33

$$32.66 = 53.92 \text{ sq. ft.}$$

near enough for all practical purposes, with the error on the side of safety. Traverses or Parados are the usual protection against reverse and enfilade fire, and, although sometimes used to protect parts of a work from direct fire, this is usually attained either by raising the parapet, by lowering the terreplein, or by both these methods combined.

**94.—Profiling.** After the trace of the work has been decided upon, the problem of defilade solved, the poles at the angles cut off as indicated, and the cross-section of the parapet decided upon, the next step is to erect profiles which shall correspond to this cross-section. These profiles are, if practicable, to be made of strips or battens 1 in. x 2 in., and placed at intervals of about 10 yds. along each face and flank, as well as at each angle.

For parapets not over 6 ft. in height, stakes may at once be driven into the ground and strips nailed to them, but for higher parapets it is more convenient to make the profile on the ground, merely driving short pickets in place of the long stakes in the first instance. When completed, the profile is up-ended and nailed to the pickets. (Pl. 12, Fig. 1.) If strips cannot be obtained, the entire profile, except the uprights, may be made of twine. The profiles at the angles of the works, known as oblique or angle profiles, will evidently differ from the others in length, while their height, on level ground, remains the same. The position of any point of the angle profile, as, for example, the exterior crest, is fixed by finding the intersection of the prolonged exterior crest lines of the face profiles. This result is accomplished by standing on the farther side of the second profile from the angle and lining in an assistant who holds a rod vertically at the angle, one end of the rod resting on the ground. After the profiles are in place, twine should be stretched between them to indicate the various crest lines. The outer edge of the battens marks the extent of the fill, except in the case of the interior slope, which is marked by the inner edge when the slope is to be revetted.

95.—Calculation of Dimensions of Earthworks. *The Command* of the proposed work having been fixed by the requirements of defilade, and the *thickness* by the character of fire expected, it becomes necessary to calculate the dimensions of the excavations, so that they will furnish enough, and no more, earth than is required. The size of embankments and trench are, by the nature of the problem, fixed, as is the depth of ditch; hence the only variable is width of ditch, which is found as follows:

Assuming the relief to be constant and the profile, for example, to be as shown in Pl. 13, make a sectional sketch of the proposed work at any point except an angle. Calculate the sectional area of parapet, glacis, and trench, in square feet, and from the sum of the first two subtract the last: the remainder divided by the assumed depth of ditch, in feet, will give the mean width of ditch, from which, knowing the slope of escarp and counterscarp, the width at top and bottom can readily be found.

96.—Earth in embankment occupies, for a time, about one-twelfth more space than it did originally if untamped, but this increase is not usually taken into account in the computations for ascertaining the width of ditch. If the earth is tamped it occupies about 1-10 less space. When the relief of a work is not constant, it is evident that, in order to get the proper amount of earth, either the depth or the width of ditch must vary. On account of the labor required in raising earth, the limit of depth is taken at 8 ft.; for a similar reason, the maximum height of parapet is taken at 12 ft. Whatever the depth of ditch assumed, it is always constant. The required width at any point is found by means of a section of the work, as already explained, a section near the extremities of each face determining the width of ditch for that entire face.

97.—An excess of earth will occur at the salients and a defi

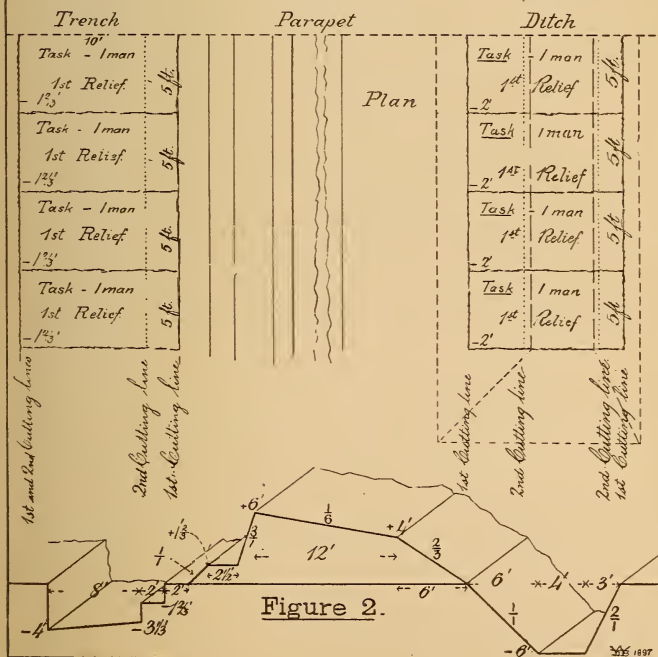
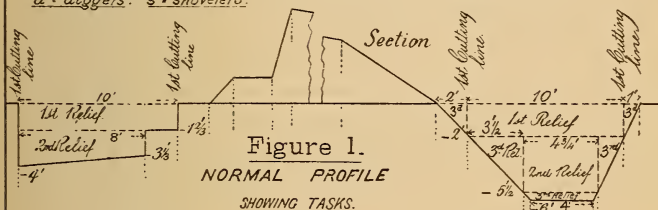


PLATE 14.

Estimate per 100 ft. of Parapet (difficult soil): 4 hr. tasks.

Chartwell 100 ft. of Fairplay (approx) 4000 ft. base									
MEN.				TOOLS.			TASKS		
EARTH FROM	1' REL.	2' REL.	3' REL.	Spades	Picks	Shovels	1' Rel	2' Rel	3' Rel.
Ditch	20 d	20 d	20 d	20	20	13	100	83	72
Trench	20 d	20 d	13 s	20	20	10	83%	80	
	10 s	10 s							
	60	63	33	40	40	23			

d = diggers. s = shovelers.





# PLATE 15.

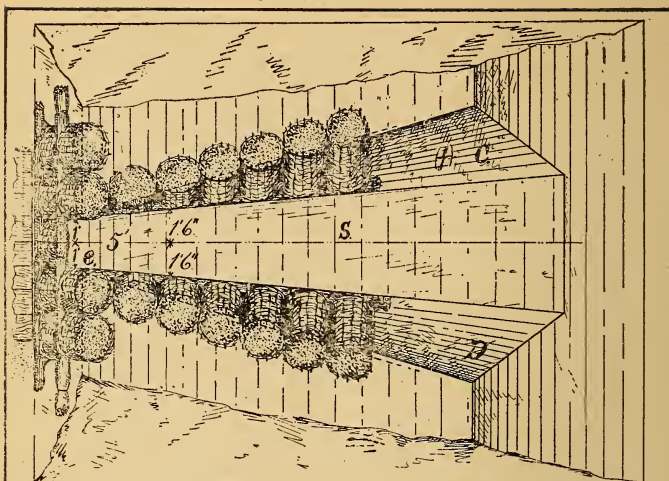


FIG 1

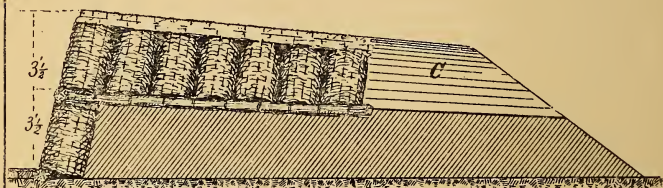
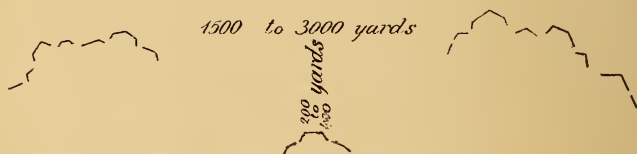


FIG 2.

1500 to 3000 yards



ciency at the reëntrants, although this may be partially obviated by making the shovelers throw toward the reëntrants.

98.—**Drainage of the trench** must be provided for at the time the work is constructed. If the fall is toward the gorge, an open drain will suffice; but if in any other direction, a covered drain (Pl. 50) should be left to carry the water to the ditch.

**Construction of Field Works.** The details of construction and dimensions of earthworks will change with varying requirements and soil, but there are certain general principles that should be followed in all.

99.—**As to profile:** *The Normal* (Pl. 14, Fig. 2) fulfills the conditions as to simplicity, protection against field artillery (in most soils), command of the ground in front, and cover standing in the trench. The trench is stepped and steps revetted to facilitate mounting the banquette, while the berm is omitted to deprive the assailants of a foothold. The command may be increased either with or without constant relief, the parapet thickened or reduced, and the trench made into a casemate without changing the type of this profile.\*

100.—**As to garrison:** For ordinary field works, the garrison is usually computed at 2 men per yard of interior crest; but for isolated works, this estimate should be increased by one-half. Embrasures and gun-banks each reduce the interior crest line available for troops, by 5 yards.

101.—**As to laying out tasks:** Cutting lines must be marked by tape or pick, computations made, and the exact size of the task for each relief determined in accordance with the rules given in Chapter VIII.

---

\*A useful feature of many of the Manchurian field works and trenches was a slight excavation along the interior slope about 6 inches below the crest, for an elbow rest in order to increase steadiness in firing and for a shelf on which to place cartridges. (Pl. 18.)

As an example of laying out tasks, assume that an earthwork with normal profile and constant command of 6 ft. is to be made on a level site.

Before work is commenced, the outer and the cutting lines of ditch and trench must be marked. As fatigue parties cannot be expected to excavate earth and at the same time preserve the proper slopes, the usual method followed is to dig vertically as indicated by the cutting lines and afterward form the slopes by cutting off the steps.

The cutting lines for the task of the 1st Relief would be made on the ground, as indicated in section and plan. (Pl. 14, Fig. 1.) The 1st Relief having finished, cutting lines for task of 2d Relief would then be marked out; and finally, the 3d Relief would complete the slopes of ditch and parapet, and finish any work not completed by the other reliefs.

When not practicable to revet the banquette and trench steps, the risers may be sloped back at about six on one.

When necessary to throw earth more than 12 ft. horizontally, extra shovelers should be provided at the rate of 1 to each 2, or 2 to each 3 diggers, depending upon the soil and the distance it is to be thrown.

102.—**Gun-banks**, when made, are usually placed in the salients, for the reasons that the guns will have a greater field of fire and it is at this point that the earth of which they are made is in excess. Pl. 12, Fig. 2 shows a gun-bank on a straight line of parapet, and Fig. 3 one at a salient. The top is horizontal and 3.5 ft. below the interior crest: this distance may vary, however, for different pieces. All slopes are one on one, except the ramp, or roadway leading up to the bank; this may be as steep as one on four, but a gentler slope is better. The width of ramp should be 8 ft. The level surface of the bank extends back 24 ft. from the parapet and a log or fascine is half sunken and picketed near the front,

for a hurter. The width of bank for a single gun is 15 ft. At a salient (Pl. 12, Figs. 3 and 4) the angle is filled in by a straight revetment from 6 ft. to 15 ft. long and the superior slope reduced to correspond to lines joining its extremities with the exterior crest salient. This forms what is known as a "pan coupé."

103.—Embrasures for field guns would be used in positions where the fire is required to be in one direction only; for example, to sweep a road, bridge, or ford; or in the flank of a work to cover ground in front of an adjacent work.

Pl. 15, Fig. 1, shows the horizontal projection and the section of an embrasure. It is made at the same time as the parapet, by making the sole "s" parallel to the superior slope. The cheeks, "c, c," are vertical at the throat, "e," and have a slope of one on one at the other extremity; their height should never exceed 4 ft.

The usual method of forming an embrasure is to stretch a string along the line of fire; at the throat lay off 1 ft. on each side of it, and at a distance of 5 ft. from the throat lay off 1.5 ft. in a similar manner. Right lines joining the corresponding points so determined will mark the outer lines of the sole, which will splay one on ten. Each throat gabion is vertical, the extreme ones being inclined three on one; the slope of the intermediate ones is secured by alignment top and bottom on the extreme ones. Each gabion is anchored independently of the others, so that one may be torn out without seriously injuring the embrasure.

104.—By the Merlon is meant that portion of the parapet between two embrasures and above the soles. Embrasures should, as a rule, never be closer together than 15 ft.; otherwise the merlon is too much weakened.

# PLATE 16.

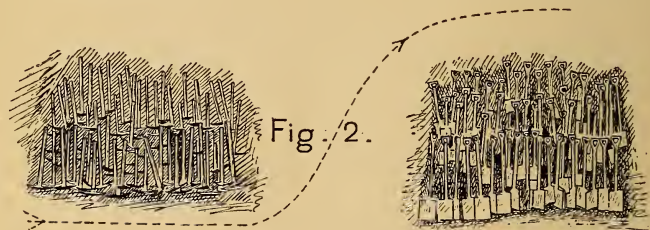
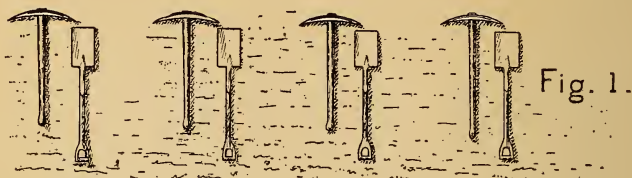


Fig. 3.

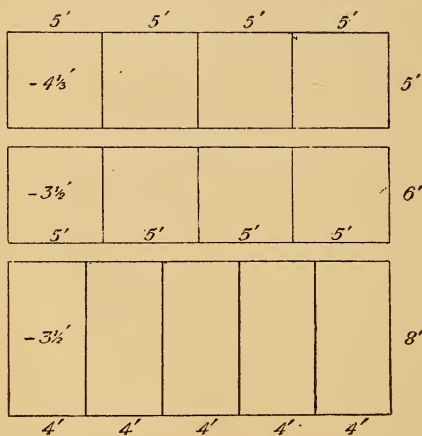
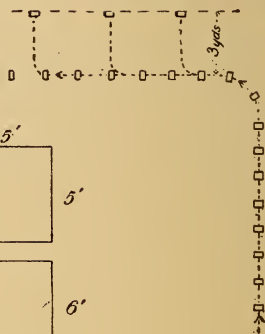


Fig. 4.

## CHAPTER VIII.—Working Parties.

Occasion may arise, as, for example, at night, in the presence of an enemy or even with a large working party, when a well-established system of taking and handling tools, distributing and relieving working parties, etc., will be a paramount importance.

**105.—Organization of Working Parties.** The nature of the required work having been decided upon, the estimate of and the application for the requisite number of men and tools devolves upon the officer charged with its execution.\*

A working party of the requisite strength (which should include a reserve of 1-10th) should be furnished, as far as possible, from a complete organization, a company, a battalion or brigade, and not from detachments of different organizations.

**106.—Responsibility.** The party should be divided into reliefs and the task each is to accomplish made plain before it begins work. The officers and non-commissioned officers of the working party are responsible for the amount of work done.

**107.—Taking Tools.** The first relief, having been formed in single rank with rifles slung across the back, is marched to the park where the tools have previously been laid out, either in rows (Pl. 16, Fig. 1) or in heaps. (Fig. 2.) The relief in the former case is advanced in line to the row and each takes a pick in the left and a spade in the right hand; in the latter case the party in column of files is marched between the piles, each in turn receiving a pick in the left and a spade in the right hand. The relief is then marched in column of fours or twos to the point where the work is to begin.

---

\*Chapter VIII. refers especially to working parties using the ordinary pick and shovel, and not the pick mattock and intrenching shovel.



108.—**Carrying Tools.** In carrying picks and spades the handles are grasped near the iron, which is held vertically, the arms extended and the hands close to the side. In turning, the point of the pick should be lowered and the blade of the shovel raised, and when marching, either in line or in column, the handles should be splayed outward, in order to prevent interference. The necessity under certain circumstances of preserving silence makes the above precautions important at all times as a matter of training.

109.—**Extending the Working Party.** When the first relief approaches the designated point it is halted, then broken into column of files and direction changed, if necessary, so that the head of the column approaches in a direction parallel to and about 3 yds. in rear of the tape marking the front edge of proposed excavation. (Fig. 3.) When the leading file is opposite his place the command is given:

(1) *On right (or left) into line at two paces interval.* (2) **March.**  
(3) *Detachment.* (4) **Halt.**

The command "Halt" is given when the leading file is 1 yd. in rear of the tape. While the line is forming, the correct positions are at once taken, as follows:

Each man on arriving at the line extends his arms horizontally, holding them thus until his own position and that of the man following him are established by touching hands. As soon as each man has his position he drives his pick into the ground on the left of his own task and lays his shovel on the ground, parallel to and at a distance in the rear of the tape equal to the width of his task from front to rear.

Rifles are then unslung, belts and canteens removed, and all having been placed on the ground three paces directly to the rear



of task, butts of rifles toward the front, the men sit or lie down behind their shovels until the order, "*Commence work.*"\*

**110.—Extension of 2d and 3d Reliefs.** Each man of the 1st relief, after completing his task, scrapes his tools and lays them together in rear of the trench.

The task being completed, each man secures his accoutrements and rifle, and then, under direction of his officers, closes in to the left (or right), forming column of fours, which is then marched back to camp.

As an incentive to rapid work, each relief should be allowed to return to camp on the completion of its task.

If the working party be large and the work of a complicated nature, each relief should arrive in successive detachments and their location on the work should have been previously designated, so that there need be no delay or confusion, even at night.

Work should not be commenced until the distribution of the entire relief is complete, since any change after work has begun tends to confusion, loss of tools, and delay.

**111.—Tasks.** An untrained workman can excavate in ordinary soil one cubic yard of earth per hour for four consecutive hours. As some men work slower than others, however, it is usual to estimate at 6 hours per man for the lifting of 4 cu. yds. of earth from a trench 3.5 to 5 ft. deep and throwing the same a horizontal distance of 10 ft.

When it is necessary to throw the earth more than 12 ft. horizontally, extra shovelers should be provided for rehandling it, in the proportion of 1 shoveler to every 2 diggers.

When exposed to the enemy's fire, a skirmish line is kept well to the front and the earth first excavated is thrown close to the

---

\*The working party can also be extended by taking intervals from single rank in the manner prescribed in Par. 101, Infantry Drill Regulations, and assembled as prescribed in the same paragraph.

edge of the ditch, forming a screen which is gradually thickened; under other circumstances the earth first excavated is thrown farthest.

Five feet, or two paces, is the usual distance apart for men to work, but they may be posted as close together as 4 ft., while using the heavy pick and shovel. As a precaution against injury to adjacent workers, the men should swing the pick in a direction perpendicular to the tape.

112.—Working parties may be extended at less or greater intervals by making the corresponding changes in the commands: when this is done, it will usually be necessary to verify intervals.

When necessary to complete a task in the shortest possible time, or when the men available greatly exceed the number of tools, working parties should be formed in double rank, two men being assigned to each set of tools, which should be carried by the front rank man. When working in this manner with a double relief, the men, under direction of non-commissioned officers, should change off every 10 or 15 minutes.

Officers having general supervision of the work should not be changed at the same time the reliefs are.

The sizes of tasks based on the 4 yd. rule may be arranged as shown in diagram. (Fig. 4.) For arrangement of tasks in difficult soil, see Pl. 14.

## CHAPTER IX.—Revetting Materials and Revetments.

113.—A Revetment is a facing used to hold up an embankment at a steeper slope than it would assume naturally.\*

114.—Revetting Materials. The revetments most commonly used in field engineering are made either of brushwood in the rough, fascines, gabions, hurdles, planks, timber, sods, sand-bags, pisa, adobe, bamboo, or of a combination of two or more of these.

115.—Brushwood, which is used in making the first four, should be of willow, birch, ash, hickory, or hazel, and is most pliant when not in leaf: it may be of any size when used in the rough, but should not exceed an inch in butt diameter for gabions and hurdles and 2.5 in. for fascines and pickets.

The working party cuts and binds the brushwood in bundles of about 40 lbs. each, putting the large and small in separate piles with butts in the same direction. For convenience, the detail should be divided into three parts—one for cutting, one for sorting and binding, the other for carrying and, if necessary, loading. Tools required and time necessary are as in "Clearing the Ground" (Chap. V.).

116.—Withes (Pl. 17, Fig. 1), which are used for binding and sewing, are made by twisting pliant rods. The butt is held under the left foot and the twisting commenced at the small end, care being taken to avoid breaking or kinking the rod. The pliancy of the rod may be increased by heating it. In using the withes for binding, an eye is made at the small end, then the withe is passed round the bundle, the butt passed through the eye and twisted

---

\*The top of the revetment (or of the interior slope when the revetment is lacking) should in intrenchments of the standing type and in field works provide an elbow and ammunition rest. (See Plates 3, 3A, 10C, and 18.)

# PLATE 17.

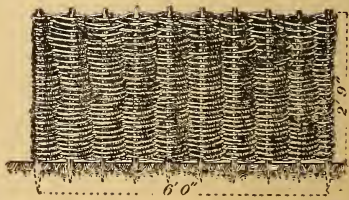
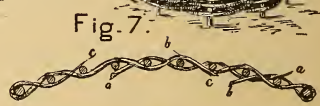
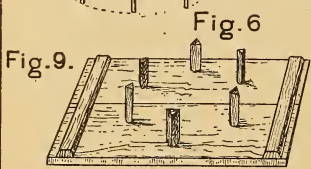
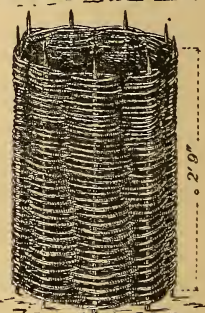
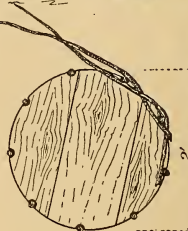
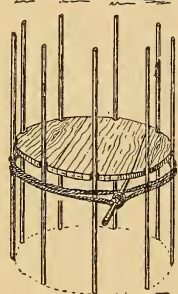
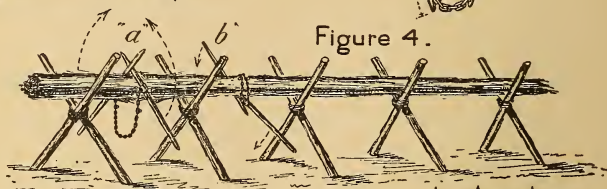
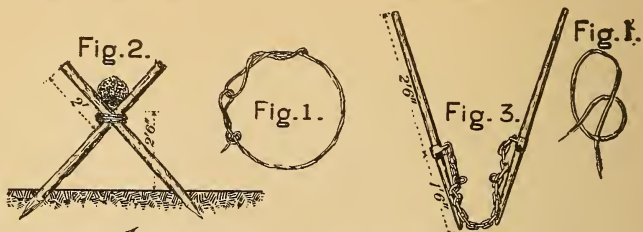


Fig. 8.

until a kink is formed, when the butt is thrust (buried) in the bundle.

**117.—Fascines.** A fascine is a bundle of rods tightly bound together. It has a length of 18 ft., a diameter of 9 in., and weighs about 140 lbs.

**Fascine Rack.** The fascine is made in a cradle rack of five equidistant trestles (Figs. 2 and 4), the outer ones being 16 ft. apart; the crotches are each 2.5 ft. above the ground and aligned. The stakes for the trestles should be from 2.5 to 4 in. in diameter and from 5 to 6 ft. in length. Those for the outer trestles are first driven and securely bound together with wire or rope, then a line is stretched from crotch to crotch and the interior trestles made in a similar manner; the stakes should be driven firmly into the ground and each should have a length of 2 ft. above the crotch.

**Fascine Choker.** For the purpose of gauging the circumference of the fascine and for cramping it in binding, the fascine choker (Fig. 3) is used. It consists of two stout bars or hand-spikes, 4 ft. long, to each of which is attached a collar 18 in. from the end, the collars being connected by a stout chain, to which are attached two gauge links 28 in. apart. The choker is used by a man on each side of the rack taking a bar of it and resting the short end on top of the fascine, chain being underneath (Fig. 4, "a"); then each passes his bar over to the other (the short ends passing around and under the fascine), and each bears down on the end of his lever. (Fig. 4, "b.")

**Making the Fascine.** The trestles having been prepared, the fascine is made by laying brushwood, trimmed if practicable, in them, the pieces breaking joints and crooked ones being partly sawed or cut through. The rods should extend from 18 in. to 2 ft. beyond the extreme trestles and the bunch made of uniform size throughout. (Fig. 4.)

The choker should be used occasionally for testing the size, and



when of such dimensions throughout that the gauge rings meet, the fascine is bound. This should be done with wire or tarred rope, which is passed twice round the fascine and securely fastened, the bindings being 12 in number, the two outer ones 3 in. outside the extreme trestles and the others at intervals of about a foot and a half. This allows the fascine to be cut into lengths of 6 or of 9 ft. Five men require about an hour to make a fascine.

**118.—Gabions.** Gabions are open cylinders 2 ft. in exterior diameter by 2 ft. 9 in. in height, varying in weight from 35 to 50 lbs.: they are made of *brushwood*, *strap iron*, *iron bands* or *sheet iron* and from 9 to 14 pickets each. The interlaced brushwood in gablons is called the *watling* or *web*. Gablion pickets should be 3.5 ft. in length and from an inch to an inch and a half in diameter. The rods for the web should be from one-half to three-fourths of an inch in diameter, although smaller may be used. Wicker gablons are most easily made with the aid of a *gabion form*, which is a circular piece of board 21 in. in diameter, with equidistant notches on its circumference, the number of notches depending on the size of the brushwood and running from 9 to 14. (Fig. 5.)

The construction of the Wicker Gablion (Fig. 7) is as follows:

**Watling.** The gabion form is laid on level ground and a picket driven vertically in each notch, the thick and thin ends of the pickets alternating. The form is then slipped up the pickets about a foot and held firmly in place by means of a rope, which is tied loosely round the pickets just below the form and then tightened by a rack stick (Fig. 6), the rope holding the pickets firmly in the notches. The rods for the web having been stripped of their leaves, the web is commenced by laying the butts of two rods in adjacent spaces between pickets, resting on the form. The rear rod, passing outside the second picket, is then bent inward, passing over the first rod, inside the third picket, and then out. (Fig. 5.) The other rod, which is now the rear one, is similarly treated

and the watling continued by using the rods alternately. This method of watling is called pairing. On coming to the end of a rod a fresh one is laid alongside and woven with it for a short distance. The web is continued to within 3 in. of the ends of the pickets, care being taken to keep the pickets vertical and to make the web close by frequent use of the mallet.

**Sewing.** To prevent the web from coming off the pickets it is then sewed with wire, heavy twine, or withes, in four places, as follows: Take an end of a withe in each hand, the middle of it resting on top of the web, pass the ends of it through the web about 6 in. down the sides, one from without inward and the other from within outward; pull taut by bearing downward. Pass the ends through the web again 6 in. farther down and tighten as before. Proceed in the same manner a third time and then bury the ends of the withe in the web. The sewing should be at equal intervals and the two ends of the withe, when pushed through the web, should be separated by two or three of the watling rods; wire is much easier worked and more durable than withes. The partly completed gabion is now inverted, the form removed, and the watling continued as before, until the gabion has a height of 2 ft. 9 in., when it is completed by again sewing as before explained. The ends of the pickets that were driven into the ground are now trimmed to within 3 in. of the web and sharpened. the opposite ends sawed off to within an inch of the web, and a carrying picket driven through the sides of the gabion perpendicular to the axis and a few inches from it.

Three men should make a gabion in an hour.

**119.—Wicker Gabion Without the Gabion Form.** Where the form is not at hand, the wicker gabion is made by first describing on the ground a circle with a 10.5 in. radius and then driving the pickets at equidistant intervals on this line. The watling is commenced at the ground and run up to the full height,



care being taken by frequent gauging to keep the dimensions accurate. It will be necessary for one man to devote his entire attention to keeping the pickets in position, while a second makes the web, and a third prepares the rods. Three men should make a gabion, without the form, in an hour and a half to two hours. Instead of sewing, the gabion may be finished by driving four forked pickets (Fig. 8) in the web alongside of the gabion pickets.

**120.—The Hoop or Strap Iron Gabion.** This is more durable and more quickly made than the wicker gabion, but is heavy, weighing 55 lbs., and liable to splinter dangerously. The form for this gabion is used solely for gauging and shaping the bands.

To make the hoops, describe on a wooden platform a circle with a 1 ft. radius and divide it into 6 equal parts. Make auger holes at points of division and insert in them wooden pins about 5 in. long and triangular in cross section, the bases of the triangles being on the interior of the circle. (Fig. 9.) Wrap the strap iron once tightly round the pins, thus forming an hexagonal hoop. Mark the point where the hoop is to be joined, then remove, punch, and rivet it. As the iron is usually 1 in. wide, the completed gabion will require 33 of these hoops.

To make the gabion, place a hoop on the ground and another on it in the positions shown. (Fig. 10.) Drive a picket vertically in each of the triangular spaces, then place the remaining hoops alternately over the first and second. Drive nails in four of the pickets outside the extreme hoops to keep the gabion intact.

**121.—The Sheet Iron Gabion.** This gabion is made of a piece of sheet iron 2 ft. 9 in. x 6 ft. 4 in., riveted or wired together along its shorter edges.

**122.—Hurdles.** The hurdle is a brushwood mat 2 ft. 9 in.

wide by 6 ft. long, the length corresponding very nearly to the circumference of the gabion. An even number of pickets, usually 10, is used in making it, the extreme pickets being somewhat heavier than the interior ones. (Fig. 11.)

**Construction of Hurdles.** Describe on the ground an arc with an 8 ft. radius, measure off 6 ft. of this arc and drive 10 gabion pickets along it at intervals of 8 in. (Fig. 11.) Commence the watling in the center space on the ground by randing—*i. e.*, working with a single rod alternately inside and outside of the pickets; on reaching the end picket the rod should be twisted as a withe, so as to avoid breaking it, and then returned toward the center in the same manner as at first. When approaching the end of a rod another should be laid alongside of and randed with it for a distance of two or three pickets. Pairing, as in gabions, should be resorted to in finishing the top and bottom of the web, and the hurdle should then be sewed as described for the gabion. When the rods used in watling are very small the process of slewing should be resorted to: this is the same as randing with the exception that 2 or 3 rods are laid alongside each other instead of using them singly. Slewing makes weaker work than randing. Three men should make a hurdle in two hours; two work at the web and the third prepares the rods. The completed hurdle weighs about 50 lbs. The hurdle is made on a curve and afterward flattened as much as possible, because it is found that by so doing it is less liable to warp than if made flat. It should be placed in a road or revetment with the concave side toward the earth.

123.—**The Continuous Hurdle** is usually preferred for revetting purposes to single ones joined. It differs from the latter in that the pickets are driven at once, at intervals of 12 to 18 in. according to their thickness, in the position the revetment is to occupy, but at a slightly gentler slope, so as to allow for straight-

# REVETMENTS.



Fig.1



Fig.2.

Figure 3.

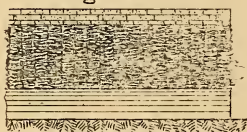


Figure 4.

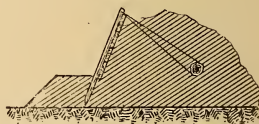


Fig.5.

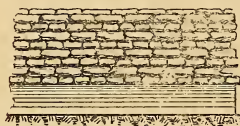
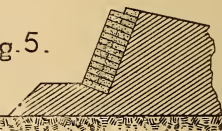


Fig.6.

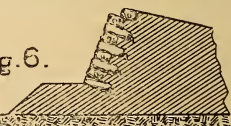
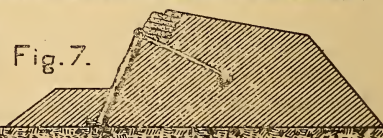


Fig.7.



ening when the earth is tamped. It is constructed by randing or slewing, two men being assigned a task of 10 or 12 ft. in length, which they should finish to a height of 4 ft. and anchor, in from one-half to three-quarters of an hour.

124.—**Planks**, when used for revetting, should be placed edgewise and held in position by stout stakes, which should be anchored. They make a neat, durable and quickly made revetment.

125.—**Round timber** from 3 to 8 in. in diameter may be used in the same manner as planks, but the revetment is more difficult of construction and is not so durable.

126.—**Sod** for revetting purposes is cut of a uniform size—18 in. long, 9 in. wide, and 4 in. thick. They should be laid in alternate rows of headers and stretchers, grass down, breaking joints, and perpendicular to the slope. The top layer should be all headers and have the grass up; alternate rows should be pinned securely, using split pickets, if possible, as with them there is less liability of splitting the sod than when round ones are used. Two men should lay from 70 to 100 sods per hour, depending upon whether or not pickets are used.

127.—**Sand-bags** are made of coarse canvas or bagging material, and, when empty, measure 2 ft. 8 in. by 1 ft. 4 in. When filled they are supposed to contain 1 cubic ft. of earth; it is found in practice, however, that a cubic yard will fill from 48 to 50, making their average size 1 ft. 6 in. long, 10 in. wide, and 6 in. thick. Each bag has eyelet holes near the mouth through which a stout cord passes, to expedite tying, when filled.

For filling sand-bags the working party is divided into squads of 6: 2 with shovels, 1 with a pick, 1 to hold the bag, and 2 to tie.

Each squad fills 150 bags per hour. This task may be considerably increased, however, in easy soil or with trained men, and

the rapidity of the work more than doubled by having a double relief and keeping the men constantly changing.

**128.—Revetments.** **Brushwood Revetment** is made by driving pickets at intervals of about 12 in. along the foot of the proposed slope. The top of the pickets when driven should be as high as the proposed revetment, and the pickets should be anchored by wire to logs or stout stakes in the parapet. Loose brushwood is laid closely behind the stakes and earth tamped against it, the construction of the parapet going on at the same time.

Brushwood revetment is rapidly made in daylight, but is neither durable nor sightly.

**129.—The Fascine Revetment.** (Pl. 18, Fig. 1.) This is made by laying the fascines in single rows of stretchers, breaking joints, each fascine being pinned to the parapet by 5 or 6 pickets, and every second or third row securely anchored.

Six-foot fascines should be used occasionally as headers. The bottom fascine is sunk about one-third of its diameter by excavating a shallow trench. The construction of parapet and revetment proceed simultaneously. Slope should not be greater than four on one. The defects of this revetment are the weight of the fascines, the large quantity of brushwood required, and the fact that the fascines are held in place by anchors and pickets in the earth which they support.

**130.—The Gabion Revetment.** (Fig. 2.) This is made by first sinking a row of fascines about 3 in. at the foot of the slope, so as to give an inclination of four on one to the gabions resting partially on them. Earth is tamped behind and in the gabions, and sod or sand-bags placed on top. Where greater height is required two rows of gabions may be used with two fascines, well picketed, between them.

Gabions make one of the strongest and most durable revetments, their own weight when filled being usually sufficient to retain the embankment.

**131.—Hurdles.** These make a poor revetment unless the method is followed of constructing a "*continuous hurdle*" at the same time with the parapet. To do this, the pickets are driven along the foot of the slope at an inclination of about three on one, when the final slope is to be four on one. The watling is made continuous by randing or slewing, each two men having four paces of hurdle as a task, and taking care to work in their rods with those of adjacent sections. (Fig. 3.)

**132.—Plank or Timber Revetment.** (Fig. 4.) This is made by driving heavy stakes into the ground at the proper angle, placing the planks or timbers behind them, then filling in and tamping firmly. The stakes must be anchored. This revetment is neat and durable.

**133.—Sod Revetment.** (Fig. 5.) This is made by laying the sod in alternate layers of headers and stretchers, grassy side down, breaking joints and perpendicular to the face of the revetment. Each sod should be well settled before another is placed on it and the top layer should be headers with grass up. It is well to pin alternate rows by means of split pickets, three-fourths of an inch in diameter and 9 in. long. This revetment is made of uniform thickness throughout by using double rows of stretchers. If the grass is long it should be mowed. If the sod is very wet when laid the revetment will crack in drying. Two men well supplied with sod should lay two paces of revetment, four and one-third feet high, in an hour.

This revetment has the advantage of not splintering like gabions, fascines and boards, but should not be used when other material is obtainable, because ordinarily it will not stand long at a steep slope (three on one being about the limit), cannot be



used when very dry or frozen, and requires great care to build properly.

134.—**Sand-bag Revetment.** (Fig. 6.) This is made by laying alternate rows of headers and stretchers, breaking joints, and perpendicular to slope, seams of stretchers and chokes of headers being put in the embankment. Men working in pairs lay the bags, settling them firmly in place with a mallet or spade. This revetment is not very durable, but the bags are easily transported, may be used with any soil, and are invaluable in making hasty repairs and loop-holes.

135.—A very durable revetment (Fig. 7), much used in the defenses of Washington, 1861-5, was made of posts (oak, chestnut, or cedar) cut in lengths of 5.5 ft. and placed side by side, at a slope of six on one. The footing was a 2 in. plank laid in a trench excavated for the purpose. The tops of the posts were sawed off 16 in. below the interior crest and capped by a half-round timber, all being securely anchored in the parapet. Crowning was completed to the requisite height with sod.

All revetments that are liable to splinter should be crowned to a height of at least 8 in. with sods, sand-bags or earth.

136.—**Pisa Revetment** is made of earth and clay, to which has been added enough water to reduce the mixture to a working consistency. A trench 6 in. deep and 18 in. wide is first dug, its nearest edge marking the foot of the revetment. Pickets, of sufficient length to reach the top of the proposed revetment, are firmly driven, at the proper angle, about 2 in. from the near edge of the trench, at intervals of about a yard, and then anchored. Boards placed on edge are now laid against the pickets on the trench side. The trench is then filled with the mixture, tamped, and more added, other boards being placed on top of the first, as required, and the mixture forced closely against them. The construction of the parapet goes on at the same time with



the revetment. When completed, the pickets and boards are removed. This revetment is neat and durable, but cannot be rapidly made.

**137.—Adobe Revetment.** The adobe is a sun-dried brick, about 18 in. x 9 in. x 4.5 in., and when carefully laid with the same bond as given for sod or sand-bag, forms a neat and very durable revetment, exceeding in the latter respect any of the other varieties mentioned.

**137a.—Bamboo Revetment.** Where material is available green bamboo split into strips an inch and a half wide makes an excellent revetment. It is constructed by randing in the same manner as the "continuous hurdle," care being taken to have the adjacent strips break joints.

The following table shows amount of various materials required for 100 running feet of 4 ft. 4 in. high revetment:

Kind of Revetment	Fascines	Gabions	Sod	Sand-bags	Pickets
Fascines . . . .	30	.....	267		150
Gabion . . . . .	6	50	400	.....	.....
Sod . . . . .	.....	.....	1867	.....	1000
Sand-bag . . . .	.....	.....		867	.....

# FIELD CASEMATES.

Fig. 1.

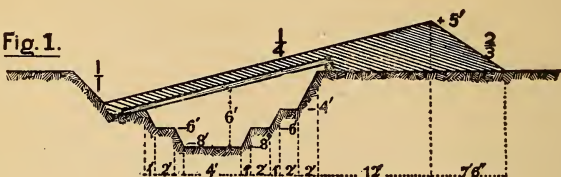


Fig. 2.

*Two rows of beds.*

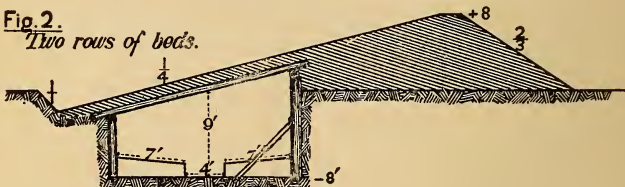


Fig. 3.

*Casemate with banquette*

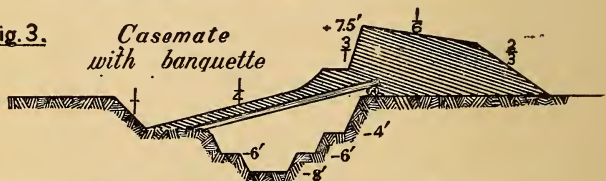


Fig. 4. *Casemate constructed same time as parapet.*

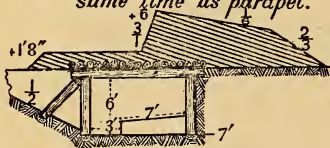
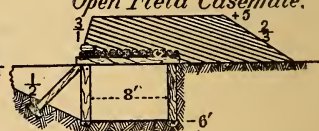


Fig. 5.

*Open Field Casemate.*



*Casemate in Side hill.*

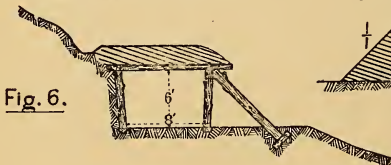


Fig. 6.

*Casemate behind Wall.*

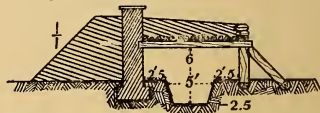


Fig. 7.

## CHAPTER X.—Field Casemates and Magazines.

138.—In all field works, protection against both weather and hostile fire must be provided for the garrison.

These shelters are constructed by building a chamber of wood sufficiently strong to bear the necessary earth covering, and by protecting this in front by an embankment thick enough to withstand direct artillery fire.

Two general forms are used:

(1) Those which, after providing complete protection from direct fire, have their roofs sloped to the rear at an angle greater than the angle of descent of the enemy's projectiles, generally about one on four; and

(2) Those which have horizontal roofs, the earth covering being so high and massive as to protect against artillery fire by its thickness alone.

The first class is preferable, the work of construction being very much less than in the second class, as the embankment is not so high and the earth on the roof does not require to be thicker than 16 in., as it has to resist only the dropping fire of small-arms and the fragments from bursting shrapnel. Moreover, it gives much easier drainage to the ditch in rear.

139.—The construction of the timber part of the casemate is practically the same in both cases. The vertical timbers being rough tree trunks, about 1 ft. in diameter, placed at intervals of 3 or 4 ft., and struttred when necessary. The roof timbers in simple casemates being not less than 8 in. in diameter and the interstices filled with small poles or brush. In case the protection has to be proof against vertical fire of mortars, the earth mask on the roof must be 6 ft. in thickness and a correspondingly stronger

timber construction must be provided: these are shown in Pl. 19, Figs. 1 to 7.

In calculating floor space, each man should have from 9 to 18 sq. ft.; the former when crowded, the latter when not.

139a.—The following is a bomb-proof construction which would be safe under the fire of projectiles having a bursting charge of 9.9 pounds of explosive gelatine and a penetration of 5 feet before bursting:

1. Frames of 8-by-8-inch pine, 5.5 feet high and 6.5 feet wide in the clear, with upper corners braced, spaced 10 inches apart.

2. Sides of poles or boards outside the frames.

3. On top: (*a*) a longitudinal layer of double thickness of railroad iron or a double thickness of 4-by-6-inch timbers; (*b*) cross layer of fascines; (*c*) longitudinal layer of 8-by-8-inch oak; (*d*) 9 feet of earth; (*e*) 20 feet of earth on exposed side.

140.—Magazines are of two kinds: *First*, those intended to hold the temporary supply for guns or troops when in action; and. *Second*, those intended for the purpose of storing ammunition in large quantities.

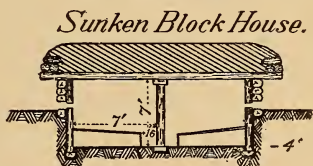
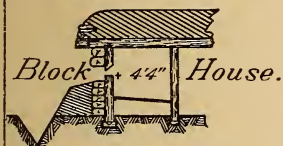
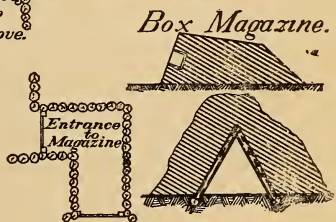
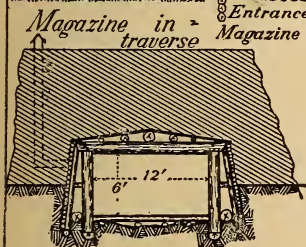
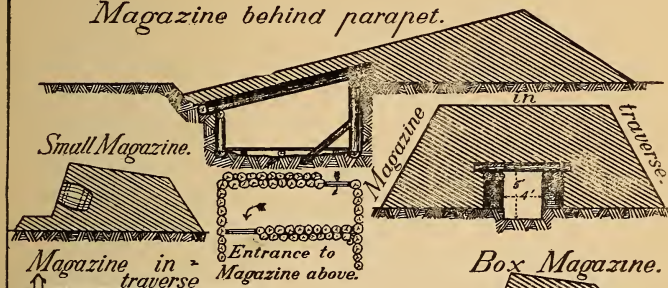
The first variety consists of recesses in the interior slope of the epaulement—barrels or gabions are excellent and when not obtainable may be replaced by empty ammunition boxes placed in holes excavated for their reception.

Magazines of the second class are used only in works of great defensive value and then only when ample time is available. They are made in the same general manner as the casemates heretofore described, except that great care must be taken to render the structure as dry as possible and to secure good ventilation.

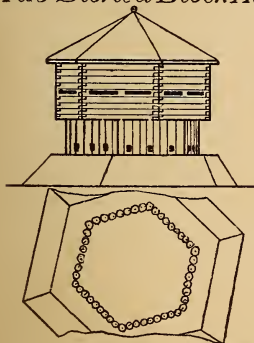
141.—The general plan of execution of these works is as follows:—

- (1) Magazine shown in Pl. 20, Fig. 1.

*Magazine behind parapet.*



*Two Storied Block House.*



*Caponier in front of wall.*





The mask in front should be 20 ft. thick. The roof consists of a row of timbers or logs 8 in. in diameter, overlaid with steel rails, and then covered with a paulin, well tarred if possible. On this is placed 16 to 18 in. of earth. The ends are made of logs, 12 in. in diameter, planted in a double row, breaking joints. The entrance is at either one or both ends according to circumstances. The doors, 2 ft. 6 in. in width, are made of planks crossed, and are hung next to the front wall of trench, opening into a passage formed by a row of upright logs parallel to those on the end of the magazine. At the end of the passage farthest from the first door a second one is hung, opening into the magazine. The vertical timbers in front and rear of trench support a revetment of planks or hurdles. The floor should be raised at least 6 in. from the bottom of the trench to guard against dampness. Care should be taken to facilitate the draining of all water that falls on the roof, and that the trench itself is drained away from the ends of the magazine.

142.—Another form is as follows:—Determine the space needed for storage of ammunition. Then build the timber work as in the preceding, first excavating to a depth of 4 or 5 ft. over the entire site. There will be no ends to be closed by timbers. The roof is made of timbers 12 in. in diameter, well supported by uprights of same size and long enough to give sufficient head room. The sides and ends should be revetted with plank, if possible, and the floor raised 6 in. above the earth. The center of the roof is raised a foot above the sides and surmounted by a layer of 6 in. of earth, well tamped; over this is laid a paulin and the earth mask is then placed over all to the thickness of 8 ft.; the covering mass in front should not be less than 20 ft. in thickness. Entrance is gained by means of a doorway opening into a passage which communicates through a return with the inte-

rior of the magazine. Doors made of crossed planks are hung as indicated in the plan. If time is available, and the planks at hand, an interior chamber should be formed, leaving an air space around the magazine proper; and inlets may be constructed, care being taken that they are not situated in exposed positions and that their course is such as to prevent the entrance of sparks. The roof should be rounded off so as to afford the easiest drainage. If the earth excavated is not sufficient to cover the roof, the necessary amount may be taken from a trench dug around the outside.

This form of magazine may with advantage be placed in a traverse.

143.—In case timber is not at hand, gabions and fascines may be used to build the magazine in the manner shown in Pl. 20.

144.—**Block Houses** are defensible shelters for infantry, although, under certain circumstances, they contain artillery.

They are generally used for the purpose of flanking defenses whose fire cannot reach into the ditch.

They are constructed either of upright timbers set in the ground close together, or horizontal timbers laid one upon the other; the timbers being in two rows, breaking joints in each case, or, if both methods are used, the outside row should be horizontal and the inner vertical. They should have at least 6 ft. of head room and should not be less than 9 ft. wide, as this allows one row of beds only. The roof should be of solid construction and covered with earth to the thickness of 2 ft. and should project 2 ft. over the wall to protect from dropping fire.

The walls should be masked with earth as high as possible and a ditch dug around the entire building. Loop-holes are made at the height of 4 ft. 4 in. and are cut according to circumstances, as described in Chap. XIII. If necessary, block houses may be



sunk in the ground, but a limit of 4 ft. in depth should be observed. The shape will conform to the necessities of the case.

**145a.—The Spanish Block House** is a modified form of the one described; it is loopholed for two or three tiers of fire, and as a secondary defense of especial value if attacked by artillery, it has shelter trenches far enough in front to escape splinters from the house. (See Par. 191.)

**145.—In isolated positions** they are advantageously made cruciform, thus presenting an opportunity for flanking each face of the house. When in wooded and mountainous countries, where artillery is not to be feared, these houses may be made with two stories, built so that the angles of the upper story project over the sides of the other, forming a machicoulis gallery, thus preventing the occupation by the enemy of the dead space in front of the straight walls.

**146.—Caponiers** are sunken block houses placed in the ditch of fortified places to prevent their occupation by the enemy: they are loop-holed about 18 in. from the ground, so as to have the most effective plane of fire. (Pl. 20.)

**147.—Tambours** are essentially block houses, having for their object the protection of angles, and the flanking of sides of buildings, and are especially useful in defending doors of buildings.

## CHAPTER XI.—Field Works in Combination.

148.—Where several field works are used in conjunction, either as an intrenched position or in the investment of a fortress, city, or other important point, they constitute what is known as a *Line of Works*.

A *Line of Works* may be *continuous*, that is, forming, together with natural obstacles, an unbroken line, or, *with intervals*, by which it is understood that the works are distinct, either supporting each other or not, and the spaces between them not impassable by reason of natural obstacles.

149.—Lines with intervals have the following advantages over *continuous lines*, viz.:—

- (a) They involve less labor.
- (b) The garrison of the defenders may be smaller.
- (c) They allow greater freedom of movement for counter-attacks.

The general principle to be followed in their construction consists in forming a line of fortified points or pivots. These points or pivots detain the enemy's advance, since he would hardly pass them and expose his flanks and rear, while a continued unsuccessful attack on the strongly fortified pivots would open the way for a counter-attack by the defenders.

When, however, the defense is intended to be solely passive, which would be the case while awaiting reinforcements, or when the enemy greatly outnumbers the defenders, the intervals would be obstructed by felling trees or using any available obstacles, since counter-attack is not contemplated.

In the use of lines with intervals, if the general defensive line is straight the works could be blunted lunettes with flanks traced so as to protect the front of adjacent works. If on a convex curve,

the capitals should radiate from a common center, while on a curve concave toward the enemy, the capitals should converge and the front of each work might be a straight line.

When impracticable to construct the main works of a line with intervals, within supporting distance (600 yds. for infantry and 2000 yds. for artillery)\* of each other, intermediate works retired from the main line, not more than half the interval, may be used.

In Pl. 21, Fig. 6, is shown such an arrangement, the pivots being single works while the artillery is retired from the main line and supported by infantry in shelter trenches.\*\*

Where the interval is as great as 1500 yds. it is advisable to strengthen the pivots considerably, forming *groups*, the individual works of each group being so traced as to afford mutual defense. (Pl. 15, Fig. 2.) Each group in this latter arrangement forms a strongly fortified point of support and would usually have sufficient strength in itself to resist assault.

150.—Sometimes, when the defense of a line is of vital importance to the defenders, a *double line of works* is employed, the front line being shelter trenches or open field works of slight profile, the second line, not over 500 yds. in rear of the first, being field works of strong profile.\*\*\*

151.—Artillery should, as a rule, be placed outside of and some-

---

\*Continuous dangerous space for Springfield Magazine rifle is slightly over 600 yards.

\*\*"The Russian line of defense south of Liaoyang was a 'line with intervals,' in which the pivots were strong infantry redoubts placed at from 700 to 1,000 yards apart, with artillery retired in the intervals at from 150 to 600 yards and supported by infantry in standing trenches. Cover trenches connected the main works with infantry trenches in rear and obstacles were freely used between and in front of the pivots."

\*\*\*Russian defensive works to the south of Mukden were of this character.

what retired from the works and protected by their own gun-pits or epaulements, for the reasons—

(1) That the works gain much in simplicity and rapidity of construction.

(2) That this disposition draws the enemy's artillery fire from the works and renders it more scattering.

(3) Greater mobility is given to the defender's artillery in case of advance or retreat.

(4) A better tactical position for this arm can often be secured than the one selected for infantry.

152.—As examples of continuous lines, Pl. 21, Fig. 1, is known as the redan trace with curtains. Fig. 2 is a modification of Fig. 1, the redans being blunted. Fig. 3 is the tenaille trace. Fig. 4 is a tenaille and redan trace. The crémaillere trace (Fig. 5) has long faces and short flanks.

With respect to the continuous lines above mentioned, the preference on a level site would usually be given to the trace shown in Figs. 1 and 2, the artillery being placed in the most favorable position along the curtains, with machine guns in the most important redans.

The tenaille and the tenaille and redan trace (Figs. 3 and 4) are objectionable, in that they involve more labor, cannot bring as direct a fire to the front, and the faces are liable to enfilade when the salient angles approach  $90^\circ$ , while on the other hand, if a salient, as "S," Fig. 4, approaches  $120^\circ$ , mutual defense of the faces, "f" and "g," would be lacking, thus making the redan, "R," necessary. This trace may, however, be rendered unavoidable by the conformation of the ground.

The crémaillere trace finds special application in a position such as is indicated in Fig. 5, viz., joining two points, one at the top and the other at the bottom of a slope, the short flanks affording but limited opportunity for enfilade fire.

# PLATE 21. —

FIG. 1.



FIG. 2.



FIG. 3.



FIG. 4.

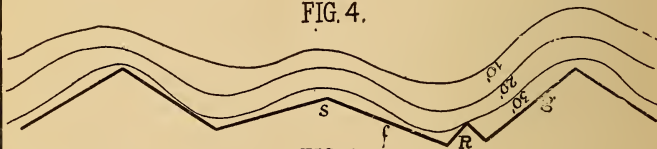


FIG. 5.



FIG. 6.

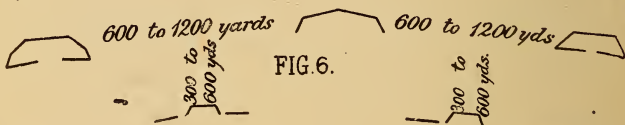
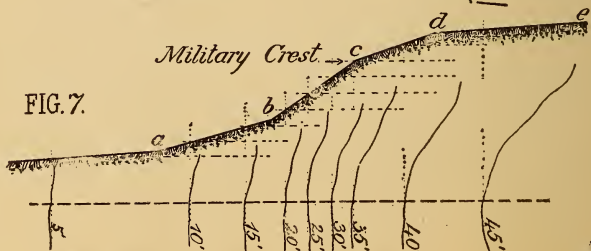


FIG. 7.



153.—The strength of a defensive position lies in a great measure in the proper utilization of the accidents of the ground; thus, the traces that have been mentioned may have to undergo considerable modification to be appropriate to the varieties of terrain constantly met. It is evident that, in a broken or hilly country, one by preference would occupy the heights. These, from a tactical point of view, possess the advantage of overlooking the low ground in front, besides the great advantage of concealing from the enemy the movements of our own troops in rear; but, since all else must be subordinated to fire effect, it is evident that such a line on the heights should be selected that the defenders may completely cover the ground over which the enemy must approach. This naturally leads to the inquiry as to how that line may be determined.

Heights, great or small, usually present the profile shown in Fig. 7, that is to say, they have a steepest slope, "b c," which is joined to the crest and to the valley below by the two gentler slopes, "a b" and "c d." In order, then, to beat the zone "b c" it is necessary to occupy the crest "c" or some point below it on this slope. To distinguish this crest from others, it will be called the *military crest*.

With the inclination of this steepest slope greater than one on four, it is unusual to construct anything but shelter trenches along the military crest, the artillery being retired sufficiently and placed in such positions as to command a good view of the rest of the field. With gentler slopes, however, the artillery may be placed at intervals along the military crest, the intermediate spaces being held by infantry in shelter trenches.

A better disposition than this, where the ground permits of it, is to place the infantry trenches part way down the slope in front of the military crest, the artillery occupying a position in rear of and close to the crest, so that little more than the muzzles of the

pieces are visible. In this case, care must be taken that the infantry trenches do not mask the fire of the artillery.

**In choosing a defensive position** the ground should be viewed from the highest point in the vicinity, and by frequent practice the eye so trained that the military crest is at once apparent and the slopes instinctively classified with respect to their use by the different arms.

Finally, the distance to a number of visible permanent points in front of the works should be determined and recorded, so that there may be no necessity for range finding during the enemy's advance.



PLATE 22.

FIG.1

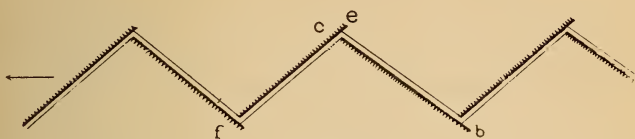


FIG.2.

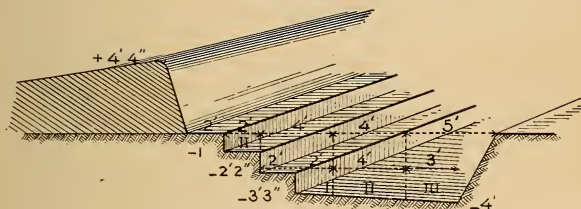


FIG.3.

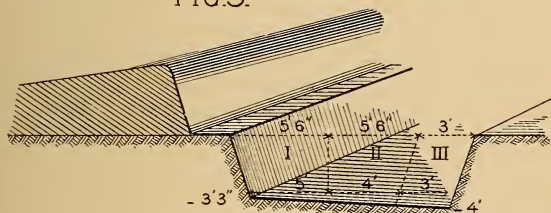
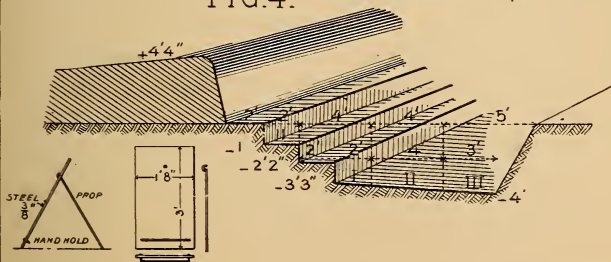


FIG.4.



Steel Sap Shield

## CHAPTER XII.—Siege Works.

154.—When it becomes necessary to besiege a place, it may be approached by common trench work or by some form of sapping. As the common trench and the flying sap are the work of infantry, they alone will be referred to.

155.—The method of providing the working party with tools, laying out the work, and extending the working party is described in Chap. VIII. It is to be noted, however, in work of this character, *that when extending along a zig-zag, upon reaching the angle the order of forming up must be reversed.* Thus, if the column from b to c (Pl. 22, Fig. 1) were forming on the left, upon reaching e f, it would form on the right.

156.—**Common Trench Work.** This may be used as a parallel, an oblique approach, or communication. The work done by reliefs in constructing a parallel is shown in Fig. 2. In this case, as musketry fire must be provided for, the second relief cuts out the top step. Should it be necessary torevet the bottom step, fascines for this purpose may be carried by the second and third reliefs. This may be and usually is omitted until the parallel is completed. Fig. 3 shows the common trench used as an oblique approach or communication. Should the trench be found wide enough the task of the third relief may be omitted.

157.—**The Flying Sap** (Fig. 4) is similar to common trench work, except that in the former case the embankment is revetted with gabions.

In taking tools, each man of the first relief is, in addition to his pick and shovel, provided with two gabions. In laying out the tools, a shovel should be fastened in one gabion by being placed between two of the gabion pickets, handle of the shovel inside.

A pick should be secured in the other gabion by having its point pushed under the pairing rods, handle inside. The gabion with shovel is taken in the right hand, the one with pick in the left: both gabions being carried by carrying pickets.\*

158.—The extension in the flying sap is made from single rank on the right or left, and differs from the extension in common trench work in that the interval, in the former case, is the width of two gabions. Each man, on coming into line, places his gabions so that they touch each other along the inner edge of the tape, takes out his tools and lays them down, as explained for working parties in Chap. VIII., and waits for the command, "Commence work." In commencing work, the gabions should first be filled; hence the position of each pair of gabions should be rectified before this command is given.

159.—Each branch of a zig-zag should receive such direction as not to expose it to enfilade fire from any point of the defenses. Its prolongation should, therefore, fall outside of the most advanced salient of the collateral works. Ordinarily it would not be longer than 100 yds. A parallel should be stepped in order to facilitate an advance from it.

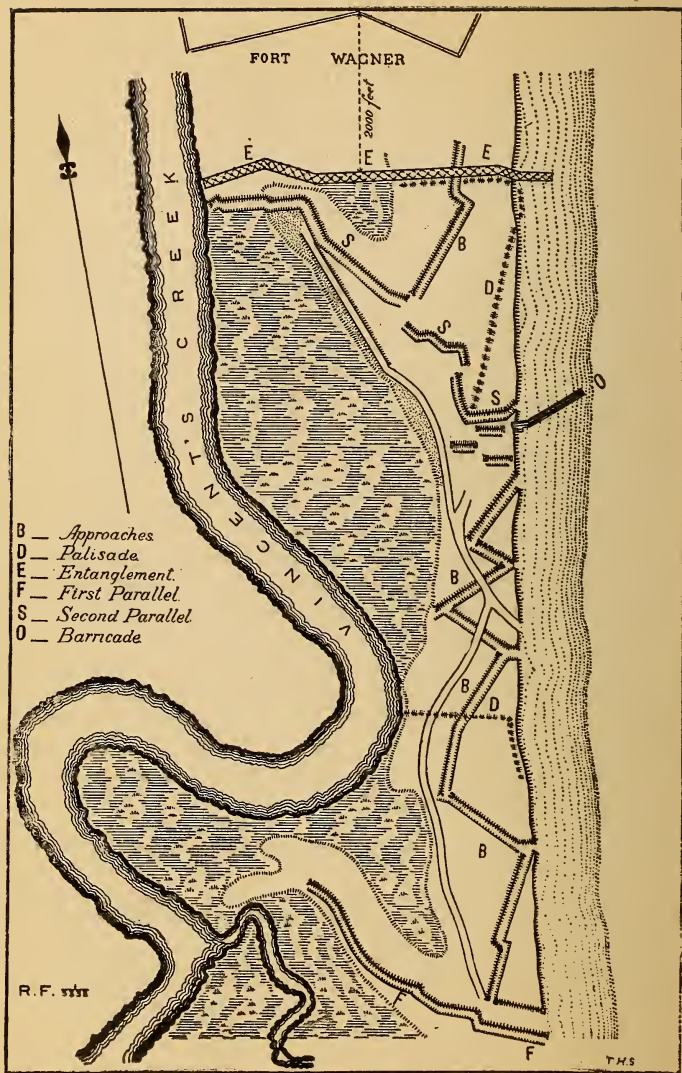
160.—A portion of the parallels and approaches used in the capture of Fort Wagner, Morris Island, S. C., September 7th, 1863 is shown in Pl. 23. A representation of the siege works used by the Japanese against Ehrlungshan Fort in the siege of Port Arthur is shown on Pl. 23A. The use of natural cover and field casemates is well illustrated.\*\*

---

\*Drawings of a steel sap shield used in the siege of Port Arthur are shown on Pl. 22.

\*\*If brushwood is not available for making gabions, it will be necessary to use sand-bags or some other expedients as indicated.

# PLATE 23.



R. F. WYLLIE

T.H.S.

PLATE 23A.

*Model of Siege works  
against Eihlungshan  
Fort "A" Siege of Port  
Arthur.*

FORT A





# PLATE 24.

Figure 1.



Figure 2.

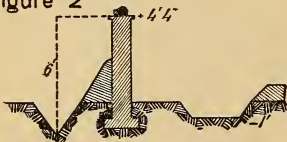


Figure 3.

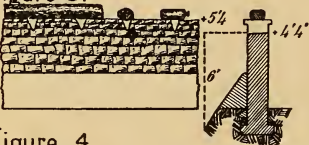


Figure 4.



Figure 5.

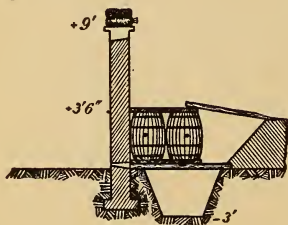


Figure 11.

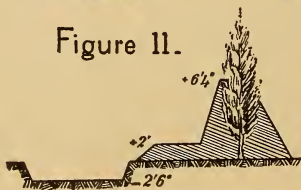


Figure 6.

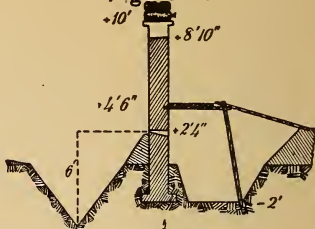


Figure 7.



Figure 8.

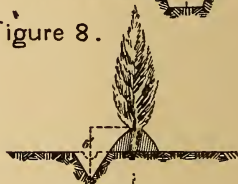


Figure 9.



Figure 10.





### CHAPTER XIII.—Defense of Localities.

**161.—Walls.** Should the enemy close on them, walls must be so prepared that they will neither screen nor cover him, nor permit his firing from them. To prevent this, obstacles may be placed in front, or a ditch may be dug outside which will place him so far below the top of the wall or the bottom of the loop-holes that he cannot fire over the one or through the other. A total height of 6 ft. will prevent this, or, in case of loop-holes close to the ground, the maximum height should not be greater than 1 ft. from the outside, or an embankment made in rear 18 in. high.

Notwithstanding these precautions, walls may still give cover; hence they should be flanked when possible.

**162.—In preparing walls for defense, the following cases arise:—**

(1) A wall less than 4 ft. high. Sink a small trench on the inside to gain additional cover. Fire over the top. (Pl. 24, Fig. 1.) Head cover should be provided with logs, sand-bags, or sods, sand-bags being the best, sods next.

Additional protection against artillery may be obtained by heaping earth from the ditch in front against the wall, the thickness depending on the kind of artillery the wall is to resist.

If this should be done, the ditch should not be too close to the wall. A trench should be dug in rear to give cover to the supports, or for the firing line when not firing from the wall.

(2) A wall between 4 and 5 ft. can be used as it stands, subject to the same modifications as in the preceding case. (Fig. 2.)

(3) Between 5 and 6 ft. a wall can be notched. The tops of the notches may be filled with sand-bags, sods, etc. (Fig. 3.)

(4) Should the wall be higher than 6 ft., a platform or staging must be raised inside to enable the men to fire over the wall or through the notches, or else the wall must be loop-holed.

163.—**Loop-Holing.** Loop-holes for fire should not be closer than 2 ft. 6 in.; ordinarily they should be 3 ft. To find the height, *hold the rifle in the position intended to be used.*

164.—To make a loop-hole in a wall (Fig. 4), 14 in. or less in thickness, begin on the *inside*, to prevent the splay being toward the outside, by detaching a stretcher: the adjacent header on the outside can then be knocked out and the loop-hole roughly shaped. Outside dimensions, 4 in. wide by 3 in. high. Interior dimensions will depend on the nature of the ground over which fire is to be delivered. For horizontal fire increase the breadth, for elevated or depressed fire increase the height.

In walls of ordinary thickness, a loop-hole can be made in about 15 minutes, a notch in about 5 minutes.

165.—For a thick wall (Fig. 4), the small part should be at the center, the loop-hole splayed to the front and rear, for it will do this anyway. The side toward the enemy may be stepped, in order that bullets striking it may flatten. Loop-holes of observation should splay towards the outside.

All loop-holes, when not in use, should be blinded.

166.—The height or position of the loop-hole is influenced as follows:—

(1) 1 ft. above the ground. Men lying down in a shallow excavation. Earth heaped up to 18 in. in rear prevents the enemy from using the loop-holes should he close on the wall. The loop-holes are a difficult mark for the enemy and sentries at night can watch the sky line. Cannot be used where ground in front is broken.

(2) Loop-holes 2 ft. 3 in. Sitting. Position easy, but must have a deep ditch in front.

(3) Loop-holes 3 ft. Kneeling. Position strained and must have a deep ditch in front.

(4) Loop-holes 4 ft. 4 in. Standing. Good command, but easier mark for enemy; ditch necessary, but not so deep as in cases 2 or 3.

(5) Loop-holes 6 ft. or more. Men standing on banquette. Best position for view or fire; no ditch in front; banquette strengthens wall, but takes longer to prepare wall in this manner; more susceptible to artillery fire.

167.—In order to allow a double tier of fire, walls should be at least 9 ft. high. (Figs. 5 and 6.)

168.—Fences. Fences should be removed or left standing according to their position or direction. Wire fence forms a good obstacle; a rail or plank fence forms a screen and may be banked with earth to give cover. If fence is of stone it may be treated as explained for walls.

169.—Hedges. Almost the same principles as explained for walls apply to hedges. A hedge primarily acts as a screen, but to resist projectiles must be banked up with earth.

Hedges possess the following advantages: (1) With little labor afford good cover. (2) Serve as a screen and also as a revetment. (3) Act as an obstacle to the enemy.

To derive these advantages hedges can be treated as follows:—

(1) A hedge with a ditch on the defenders' side. Can be used as it stands, the ditch being converted into a trench, widened and improved if necessary. (Fig. 7.)

(2) A hedge with a ditch on the enemy's side. Deepen the ditch if necessary, and throw the earth to the defenders' side to give cover. If this is not possible, scatter the earth and dig a trench in rear. (Figs. 8 and 9.)

(3) A hedge with ditches on both sides. Deepen the ditch on the enemy's side, using the earth to obtain cover. Trench on defenders' side may be deepened. (Fig. 9.)

(4) Hedge on sloping ground. Gain cover by a small trench in rear; scarp away the ground in front, forming a glacis. (Fig. 10.)

(5) High and strong hedges. When time is available, may be treated as in Fig. 11. This is advantageous where additional command is required.

(6) A sunken road with hedges on both sides. Dig a shelter trench in rear of the hedge on defenders' side and utilize the earth to form a breastwork. Cut down the hedge on the enemy's side, entangling it to form an obstacle.

(7) Hedge without ditches. Excavate a shelter trench on defenders' side and bank up the earth against the hedge as a breastwork.

Weak places in hedges should be closed up with boughs, stakes, wire, etc., as a strong hedge, in addition to being a screen, forms a very efficient obstacle.

**170.—Embankments may be defended:—**

(1) Narrow Embankments. By occupying the inner edge better cover is obtained, but, unless the bank is both low and narrow, there is a dead space in front at the foot of the outer slope. (Pl. 25, Fig. 1.)

(2) Broad Embankments. By occupying the front edge, a better field of fire is obtained, but less cover can be provided for the firing line, and the supports are exposed when coming into action. (Fig. 2.)

**171.—Cuttings** are usually defended on the defenders' side, since in this case retreat is easy and the cutting itself forms an obstacle to the enemy's advance. But for active defense the front edge may be held, and then a forward movement is possible. In this case a means of retreat must be provided.

**172.—Fig. 3** shows a case where the fall of the ground admits of both sides of the cutting being occupied, giving a double tier of

PLATE 25.

Figure 1.



Figure 6.

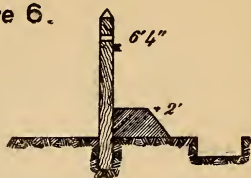


Figure 2

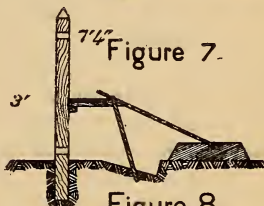


Figure 3



Figure 8.



Figure 4.



Figure 9.

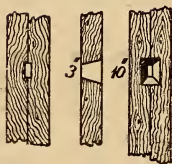


Figure 5.

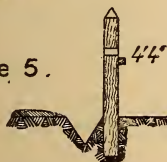


Figure 10.



fire. The command of the higher edge over the lower should be about 6 ft.

173.—In case of a road cut, as in Fig. 4, the upper fence may be used to sustain a breastwork, while the hedge below may be converted into an obstacle.

174.—Woods.—(Pl. 26, Fig. 6.) Preparation of edge of wood occupied. The edge of a wood should be put in a state of defense and an abatis is the readiest means of doing it. The salients should first be prepared, the reëntrants next, and then roads entering the wood from the enemy's side. Instead of an abatis, the outer trees may be left standing and an entanglement made by packing in among them smaller trees cut about 10 to 20 paces to the rear. This clearing will serve as a communication all round the edge of the wood.

If a reëntrant bend is deep the abatis or entanglement may be carried straight across it and flanked from the adjacent salients. In case of a road, a lunette may be used instead of the abatis or entanglement. In case there is not time to prepare the entire edge of the wood, the salients may alone be prepared, the flanks of the defense being turned back for a short distance into the wood.

175.—Preparation of woods lying beyond. Woods beyond, within rifle range of the line of defense, but too far to the front to be occupied, and too extended to be felled, should have an abatis or entanglement on the rear side to act as an obstacle.

176.—Cover. Trench digging is difficult on account of the roots, but when possible it should be done. Cover is generally obtained from the natural features. Trees, unless very large and standing thickly, do not give complete protection against artillery fire. Troops as supports and reserves, if not so far to the rear as to preclude their seeing through the wood to the front, may be covered by log walls and trenches.



# PLATE 26.

Fig 1.

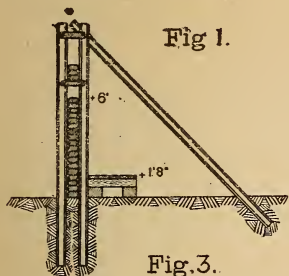


Fig.2.

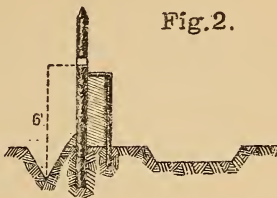


Fig.3.

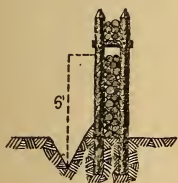


Fig.4.



Fig.5.



Fig.6.



Atolls  
Communication  
Frank

177.—**Communications.** (a) There must be good radial communication as well as free movement along the boundary in rear of the firing line.

(b) Roads and paths for bringing up the supports must be clearly marked by blazing as well as by posting sentries at all cross roads.

(c) In dense woods, preparations should be made for blocking up roads by cutting trees on either side of them nearly through, to be pulled down across them in case of retreat.

178.—**Second and third lines** may be placed along any open space, brook, or broad road, parallel to the front. In case of brook, the brook should be in front of defenders' position.

179.—**Artillery** should generally be placed outside of the wood on the flanks. If placed in the wood, batteries should be placed far apart, near good roads, masked as much as possible, and each gun having more than one position. Reëntnants are desirable.

The number of defenders is estimated at 2 to 3 men per yard of front.

180.—**Stockades.** Stockades are timber defenses, made by placing one or more rows of timbers or rails upright or horizontally, and so close to one another as to keep out rifle bullets, loopholes being made, through which fire is delivered. They have the advantages of combining a parapet and an obstacle in one, giving good cover and ample interior space, and of being easily guarded against surprise. On the other hand, they require considerable time for construction, a certain amount of skilled labor, and are easily destroyed by artillery fire.

181.—**Stockades would be employed:—**

(1) Where timber is plentiful.

(2) When artillery fire is not to be resisted.

(3) When acting purely on the defensive. They are useful for

the rear faces or gorges of half-closed works, and may be a good deal used in the defense of houses, streets, villages, and even woods.

**182.—Stockades of vertical timbers.** Vertical timbers should be close together, planted in the ground to a depth of 3 or 4 ft., according to their size and weight, pointed or spiked at the top, and loop-holed at intervals. A ribband must be spiked along the *inside*, near the top, to keep the timbers close together.

**183.—**Pl. 25, Figs. 5, 6, and 7, show stockades with squared timbers; Fig. 8 with round timbers squared where they touch and the joint between every two trees made good on the inside by a smaller tree.

**184.—**The loop-holes should be made in the crack between the timbers, in order to avoid weakening them, half being cut out of each. (Fig. 9.) In round timber, two saw cuts will make a loop-hole. (Fig. 10.)

**185.—**The loop-holes should be cut before the timbers are placed in position and the same precautions in regard to them as given in walls should be observed. A loop-hole can be cut in from 10 to 15 minutes.

**186.—**In the foregoing cases, where the stockade is built of timbers placed vertically, squared timbers are preferred, as they are more easily fastened together and the joints made bullet-proof. In round timbers the logs should be as straight as possible. If very crooked, two complete rows will be required.

One N. C. O. and 10 men will erect 15 running feet of stockade of squared timber, with one tier of loop-holes, in 8 hours.

**187.—Stockades of horizontal timbers, iron rails, fascines, or logs.** (Pl. 26.)

Fig. 1 shows stockade of rails and ties. Can only be used for a very short distance, as it will involve an immense amount of plant. Can be used to cover guns, close a road, and is more properly a barricade.

Fig. 2 shows a stockade or log breastwork, banked in rear with earth held in place by planks or hurdles and stakes.

Fig. 3 shows a stockade or breastwork of logs and fascines.

188.—Stockade work, both vertical and horizontal, can be used for the construction of *tambours* (Figs. 4 and 5) and *caponiers* for flanking walls or stockades and covering entrances. Tambours may be triangular or rectangular in shape, arranged for one or two tiers of fire, and covered with a splinter-proof roof.

189.—Buildings. Buildings may be used for defense, either singly or in combination:—

(a) As tactical points in the battle-field, held either as advanced posts, or as supporting points in the line or on the flanks, or as rallying points to cover retreat.

(b) As keeps to a more extensive position, such as a wood, village, etc.

(c) As an isolated post on the lines of communication.

190.—In order to admit of use as a defensible post, a building should possess the following requisites:—

(1) Solidly built of soft stone, brick, or adobe.

(2) Large enough to hold at least half a company.

(3) Sheltered from distant artillery fire; otherwise the building cannot be held against infantry or cavalry.

(4) Well selected for the object in view.

(5) Low, flat roof.

(6) Clear field of fire obtainable.

(7) Shape in plan affording flank defense.

191.—The building should be looked upon as a *keep*, or *second line* of defense, a first line being prepared at a *minimum* distance of 40 yds. to the front, this distance being the least that will give the defenders immunity from splinters caused by shells striking the building.

192.—In falling back, the first line should retreat *past*, not into the house, which should by this time be occupied by the supports. The garrison of the house may be estimated at two men to each door, window, or loop-hole, with a reserve of one-fourth, tactical unity being in this, as in all similar cases, adhered to as much as possible.

193.—The following are the steps which must be taken in hastily preparing a house for defense:—

(a) Remove the inhabitants, also all easily combustible material, and provide water and heaps of earth in each room.

(b) Barricade doors and ground-floor windows (bullet-proof if possible), also mask inaccessible windows, and remove all glass.

(c) Make loop-holes in doors, shutters and walls, and, in the case of a sloping roof, remove tiles or slates.

(d) Clear away cover in the vicinity as far as time and means will allow.

(e) Open up communication throughout and prepare a means of retreat.

194.—The same precautions as to loop-holing walls apply in case of buildings. On the ground floor the horizontal dimensions of a loop-hole should be greatest; on upper floors, the vertical dimension. If an artillery attack is feared, shelter trenches should be provided outside the building on the flanks.

195.—Barricades for Doors may be made in the following ways:—

(a) Fill boxes, barrels, cupboards, etc., with earth and place them against the door *inside*.

(b) Build a wall of brick, stone, flag-stones, or hearth-stones, against the door inside, and support by a shutter or another door.

(c) If railway plant is available, pile ties horizontally on one another and secure with telegraph wire.

(d) Pile lumber inside the door and fix with blocks nailed to the floor.

(e) Other methods may be employed in accordance with material available.

196.—Should a door be reserved for use, it should be in a re-entering angle of the building, if possible, and protected from fire. A couple of chests filled with earth and placed on rollers may be used to secure the door. Similarly it may be possible to place iron or wood on the door, thus rendering it bullet-proof.

197.—**Windows.** Windows must be barricaded as explained for doors. If provided with shutters, these should be utilized. Upper windows require to be bullet-proof only high enough to cover the defenders. Bedding is no protection against modern rifles, but may be used to mask windows of upper floors. If timber is used it should be placed vertically and nailed to horizontal ribbands strutted back to the floor.

198.—If the house is large and strong and is to be held to the last, in addition to the foregoing the following preparations should be made:—

- (1) Arrange for storage of provisions and ammunition.
- (2) Set apart a place for a hospital.
- (3) Prepare latrines.
- (4) Loop-hole partition walls and upper floors.
- (5) Make ready barricades to cover retreat from one part of the building to another.
- (6) If artillery is feared, shore up the floors and cover them with about 3 in. of earth.

199.—Should the construction of the house not afford sufficient flank defense, it can be improvised in the shape of tambours or caponiers, but the labor involved in their construction is considerable and they would only be undertaken for the defense of a very long wall or to cover an important entrance or communication.



For the latter purpose a *machicoulis gallery* is sometimes employed. (Pl. 27, Fig. 3.) This is made by removing the wall of the upper story where a window occurs down to the level of the door, running out two or three long balks so as to project a few feet beyond the wall, the other ends being secured down to the floor. On these planks are nailed, with holes cut through to act as loop-holes, and a musket-proof parapet of planking, sand-bags, etc., is built all around. A projecting veranda offers a favorable position for this arrangement.

Second method: If a regular gallery can not be made, holes may be cut in the wall at a convenient height for a man to fire downwards when leaning over, and a screen of wood or other material may be secured outside for protection. (Fig. 4.)

If neither of the foregoing methods be possible, holes may be made in the roof, through which grenades may be thrown on the enemy.

200.—The materials most likely to be useful in preparing a house for defense are sand-bags, stout timbers, such as railway ties, large boxes, chests, barrels, coal-boxes, furniture and bedding.

201.—Pl. 27, Figs. 1, 2, and 5, illustrate the more important points in the defense of a house.

202.—Farms. Farms should be defended according to the nature of the surface covering, the ground and the improvements, and may involve the preparation for defense of walls, hedges, cuttings, embankments, buildings, woods, etc. Owing to their positions, farms may become very important and a great amount of fighting take place for their possession. They may occur either in the main line of a position, as an advanced post in front, or as a reserve station or rallying point in rear.

203.—Fig. 6 shows the principles of defense applied to a farm lying in advance of a stream, which is a point that requires to be

Fig. 1.

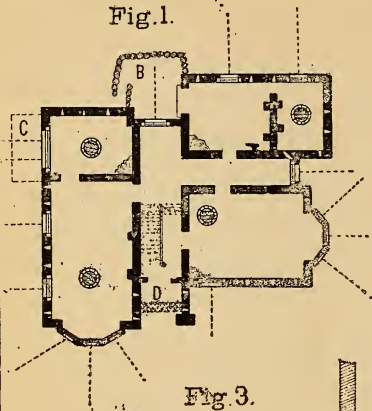


Fig 2.

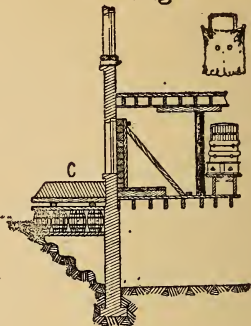


Fig. 3.

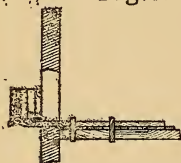


Fig. 4.

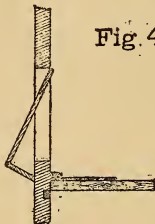
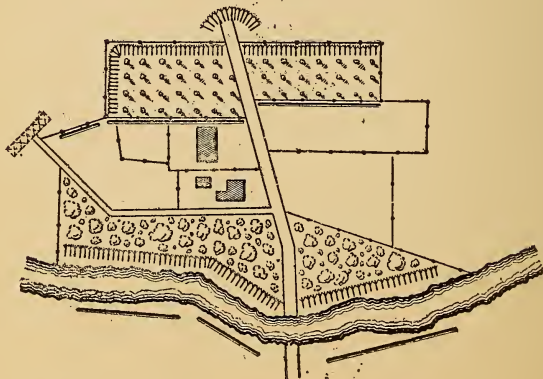


Fig. 5.



Fig. 6.



strongly held. From the position of the farm it must be held as an advanced post.

The firing line is established along the fences bounding the fields and orchard. The farm buildings are loop-holed and can be held should the firing line be forced, while the fire from the house would render occupation of the farmyard by the enemy difficult. Further to the rear, the wood is strongly prepared for a final position, as shown in the figure.

204.—The rear of an advanced post should be left weak and open to facilitate recapture.

205.—**Villages.** Villages can be rapidly prepared for defense and, under favorable circumstances, obstinately defended; consequently they are valuable supporting points in a defensive line. Owing to the effect of modern artillery and the liability of bursting shells to set villages on fire, great precautions have to be taken in the preparation for defense.

206.—A village, when properly prepared and defended, may have the following advantages:—

- (a) Can be rapidly placed in condition for defense.
- (b) Defense may be obstinate—thus giving time.
- (c) Conceals the strength of the defenders.
- (d) Provides a certain amount of cover from fire.
- (e) Shelter from the elements.

On the other hand:—

(a) The garrison is scattered, and hence the difficulty of supervision.

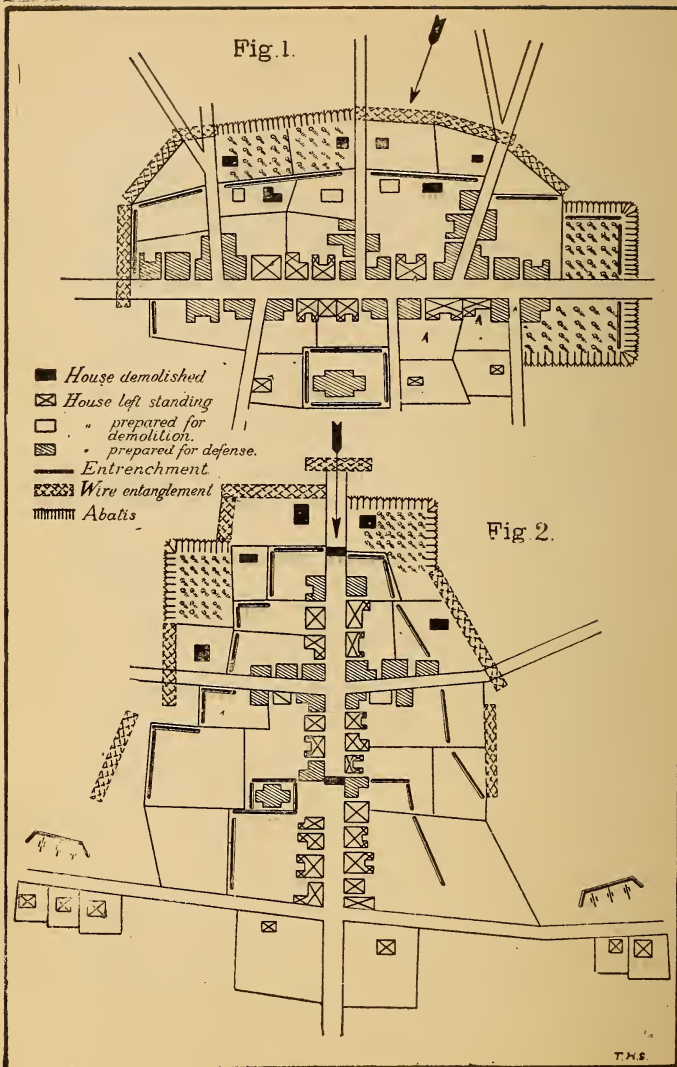
(b) When under artillery fire, splinters may cause many casualties.

(c) Liability to be set on fire by shells.

207.—A village may be held with the following objects in view:—

- (a) As a supporting point in the main line of defense.

# PLATE 28.



(b) As an advanced post in front of the main line.

(c) As an independent post.

(d) As a reserve station or rallying point in rear.

In the *first* case, strengthen the front and flanks. The rear should be prepared to resist infantry. In the *second* case, the distance from the main line will govern the amount of preparation. If very distant, should be prepared for all-round defense. If within rifle range, the rear should be left open, so that in case the village is taken, recapture will be facilitated. In the *third* case, if an independent post, must be prepared for an all-round defense. In the *fourth* case, if in the rear of the main line, must be prepared for a protracted, all-round defense.

208.—Whether or not a village is to be held will depend on:—

(1) Its tactical value as compared with the number of men required to defend it.

(2) Whether it is practicable to provide a sufficient garrison for its defense.

(3) Whether it will be possible to demolish the village entirely, in order to deprive the enemy of the cover it provides.

(4) On the form and nature of the surrounding country—i. e., no commanding ground within artillery range, foreground easily prepared and the unimpeded advance of the defenders' troops in the required direction easily arranged.

(5) On the shape of the village—whether broadside, salient, or circular.

(6) Nature and materials of the houses.

209.—The first points to determine in preparing a village for defense are how much of it will be defended, whether there are buildings suitable for a keep or citadel, and whether or not these are properly located.

210.—The arrangements for defense would be made in the following order:—

- (1) Clear the ground toward the enemy. (See Chap. V.)
- (2) Cover for the firing line, supports, and reserves. (See Chap. IV.)
- (3) Creating obstacles. (See Chap. VI.)
- (4) Preparing communications. (See Chap. XVII.)
- (5) Constructing retrenchments, citadels, or keeps. (See "Buildings.")

211.—The garrison of a village may be estimated at two men to the yard of perimeter to be defended.

212.—**Salient Village.** (Pl. 28, Fig. 2.) The successive lines of defense must be carried well out to both sides and the flanks well protected; otherwise the enemy may turn them and avoid fighting in the streets.

213.—**Broadside Village.** (Fig. 1.) Here the outside fences must be more utilized than the actual buildings, as the latter are open to fire from artillery.

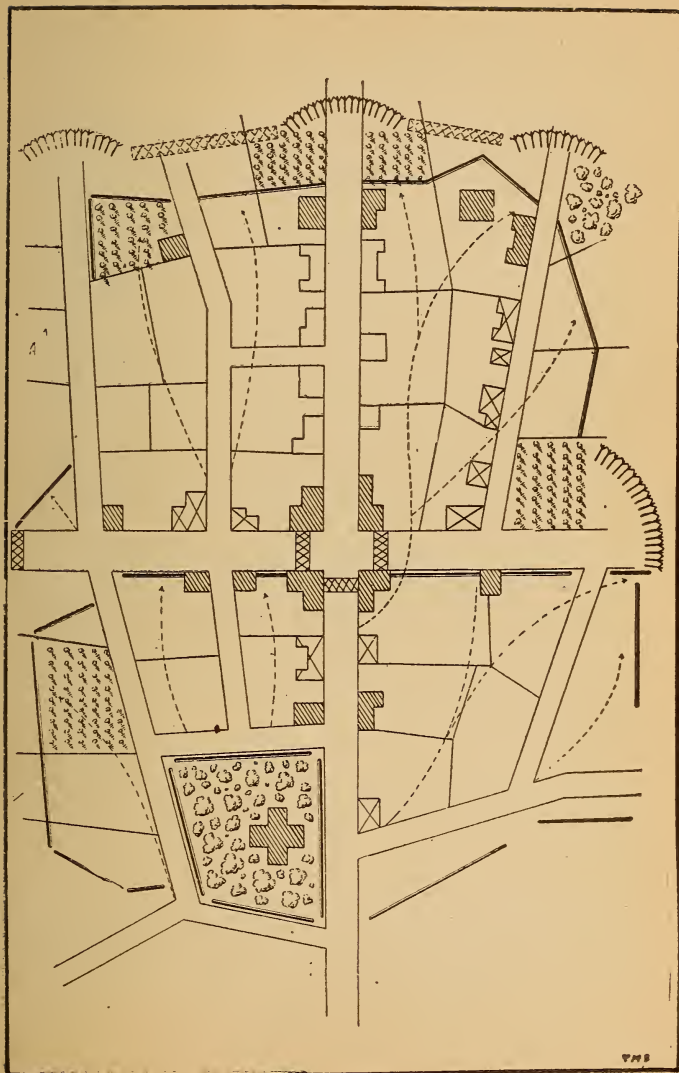
214.—**Circular Village.** (Pl. 29.) Great attention must be paid to the proper division of the village into sections for defense and preparing and making the communications.

215.—In any of the foregoing cases, if cover does not exist for supports and reserves, it must be provided, as the village will probably be shelled before being assaulted.

If artillery is to be used it should be placed on commanding ground, inaccessible, if possible, to the enemy, and so that its fire will sweep those parts most favorable to the enemy's advance.



PLATE 29.



#### CHAPTER XIV.—Use of Cordage and Spars.

216.—A rope is composed of three or more strands of fibrous material or of metal, twisted together. The strands of fibrous ropes are formed of threads of cotton, or hemp, or manila, or other similar material; the strands of metal rope, of iron or steel wires. A class of metal ropes is made with a fibrous or a wire center to make them more pliable. Fibrous ropes, when new and dry, stretch considerably; when wet, they contract; advantage is often taken of this latter fact to tighten temporary lashings. Manila rope is only about three-fourths as strong as hemp rope; tarred rope only about three-fourths as strong as untarred and is also less durable. A few months of exposed work weakens ropes from 20 to 50 per cent.\*

217.—A rule approximating to the breaking weight of a new rope, in tons of 2,000 lbs., is to take one-fourth the square of the circumference in inches. The strength of pieces from the same coil may vary 25 per cent.

*Ropes in daily use* should not be worked up to greater than 1-5 their breaking loads, to meet the reduction in strength by wear and exposure.

218.—The following table gives the approximate breaking loads and weights of new Manila ropes, Swede's hemp center Iron pliable ropes of 6 strands of 19 wires each, and hemp center Steel pliable ropes of 6 strands of 19 wires each, Manufacturers' Tests:

---

\*In building operations and for other purposes on land, the sizes of ropes are generally designated by their diameters in inches. In operations connected with shipping on water and on ships by sailors the sizes are generally denoted by their circumference in inches. Hence, in every case, when specifying a size of rope, the method used should be stated, to avoid mistake.

Diam. in inches	Breaking loads in lbs.			Weight per 100 ft. in lbs.		Minimum Size of Sheaves in feet for Iron and Steel
	Manila	Iron	Steel	Manila	Iron & Steel	
1-4	780	.....	.....	3	...	...
3-8	1,280	5,000	.....	5	26	1
7-16	1,562	6,200	12,000	61-8	29	1½
1-2	2,250	7,600	15,000	8	35	2
5-8	4,000	11,000	24,000	13.5	70	2¾
3-4	5,000	17,500	36,000	16.5	88	3¼
7-8	7,500	23,000	50,000	24	120	3½
1	9,000	32,000	66,000	30	158	4
1¼	14,000	54,000	104,000	45	250	5
1½	20,250	78,000	154,000	66	365	6½
1¾	30,250	108,000	212,000	97	525	7½
2	36,000	130,000	250,000	115	630	9

**219.—Knots, Hitches, etc.** *The standing part of a rope is any part not an end.*

*A bight* is a loop formed in a rope. (Pl. 30, Fig. 1.)

*Whipping* is securing the end of a rope with twine to prevent it from fraying out. (Fig. 1.)

*Parceling* is wrapping a rope to prevent chafing or cutting against a rough surface or sharp edge. (Fig. 1.)

*Stopping* is fastening two parts of a rope together without a crossing or riding. (Fig. 1.)

*Seizing* is fastening two parts of a rope together with or without riding and finishing with crossings or frapping turns. (Figs. 5 and 17, frapping turns not shown.)

*Nipping* is taking turns crosswise between the parts to jam them, finishing with crossings or frapping turns, latter not shown in figure. (Fig. 1.)

*Splicing* is joining the ends of ropes by opening the strands

and placing them into one another (Figs. 2 and 3), or by putting the strands of the ends of a rope between those of the standing part. (Fig. 4.) The splice is about  $\frac{1}{8}$  weaker than main rope.

*Rolling or stopper hitch*, for fastening a rope to a strap or tail block, and to secure a fall while being shifted on a windlass or capstan. (Fig. 5, and Pl. 45, Fig. 5.)

*Overhand knot*, to prevent the end of a rope from fraying out, from slipping through a block, and the beginning of several other knots. (Fig. 6.)

*Figure of 8 knot*, for same purpose as overhand knot and used in making cask piers. (Fig. 7.)

*Square or reef knot*, for joining the ends of two ropes the same size. (Fig. 8.)

*Thief knot* (Fig. 9), with ends on opposite sides, and *Granny knot* (Fig. 10), by crossing the ends the wrong way, both looking like square knots, are to be avoided, as they will not hold.

*Single bow or slip knot*. (Fig. 11.)

*Square bow*, which can be cast off. (Fig. 13.)

*Marlinspike hitch*, used in putting on lashings, etc. (Fig. 12.)

*Sheepshank*, used to shorten a rope temporarily without cutting. (Fig. 14.)

*Two half hitches*, for fastening the end of a rope around its own standing part. (Fig. 15.)

*Round turn and two half hitches*, to secure guys to stakes, etc. (Fig. 16.)

*Fisherman's bend or Anchor knot*, for fastening a rope to an anchor or ring. (Fig. 17.)

*Weaver's knot or sheet bend*, for joining ropes of different sizes without jamming. (Fig. 18.)

*Double sheet bend*, more secure than the single bend. (Fig. 19.)

*Clove hitch*, for fastening a rope to a spar; the end may afterwards be stoppered to its own part. The clove hitch differs from

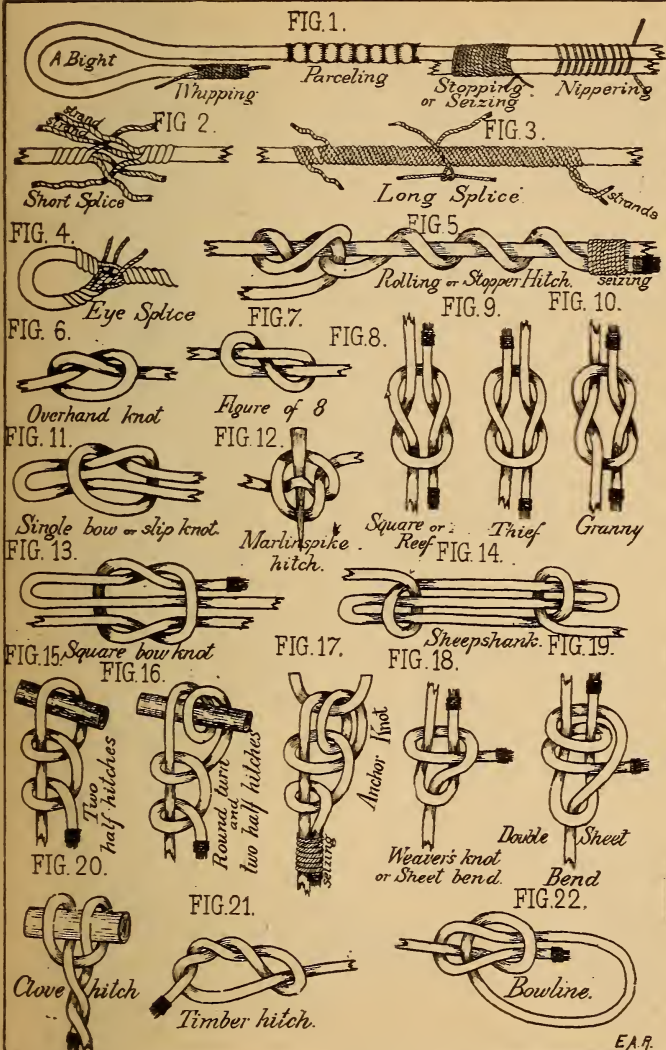




PLATE 31.

FIG. 1.



*Bowline on a bight*

FIG. 6.



*Lark's head.*

FIG. 10.



FIG. 2.



*Cat's paw*

FIG. 7.



*Prolong*

FIG. 3.



*Wall knot.*

FIG. 4.



*Blackwall*

FIG. 8.



FIG. 5.

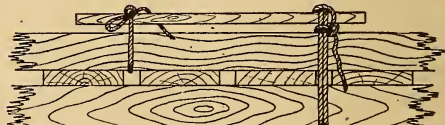


*Carrick Bend*

FIG. 9.



FIG. 11.



*Rack lashing*

FIG. 12.

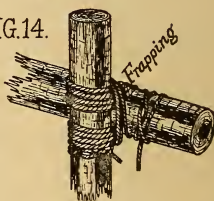


*Rack lashing*

FIG. 13.



FIG. 14.



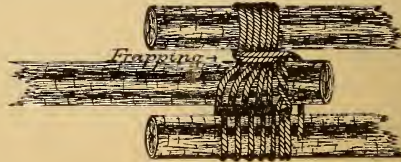
*Square Lashing*

FIG. 15.



*Shear Lashing*

FIG. 16.



*Gin lashing*



two half hitches only in being made around a spar or other rope instead of around its own standing part. (Fig. 20.)

*Timber hitch* jams when made round a timber. (Fig. 21.)

*Bowline*, to form a temporary loop at the end of a rope. (Fig. 22.)

*Bowline on a bight*, to make a loop on a bight. (Pl. 31, Fig. 1.)

*Cat's paw*, for applying a purchase or tackle to the fall of another. (Fig. 2, the beginning; Fig. 3, how applied.)

*Blackwall hitch*, for fastening the end of a rope on a block in the simplest manner, or fastening a rope in a hook. (Fig. 4.)

*Mousing* is a seizing placed around a hook to prevent it from spreading or unhooking. (Fig. 4.)

*Carrick bend*, to fasten guys to a derrick. (Fig. 5.)

*Lark's head*, for fastening a bight to a ring. (Fig. 6.)

*Capstan* or *Prolonge*, making fast a spar. (Fig. 7.)

*Wall knot*, for finishing off the end of a rope to keep from unstranding (Fig. 8), by passing the strands, as shown, then drawing them down into a knot.

*Frapping* is passing a rope around a lashing to keep the turns together. (Figs. 14, 15 and 16.)

*Straps* are rings used for attaching tackles to spars or ropes. (Pl. 33, Figs. 1, 2 and 6.)

220.—To make a short splice. (Pl. 30, Fig. 2.) Unlay strands of each end for a convenient length; take an end in each hand, place end to end, strands sandwiching, and grasp the three strands from opposite rope in left hand. Take a free strand, pass it over the first strand next to it, then through under the second and out between the second and third from it, then haul taut. Pass each of the remaining six strands in same manner, first those of one end and then those of the other, and so continue as far as desired.

221.—To make a long splice. (Fig. 3.) Unlay strands of each

end, three or four times longer than for short splice, and place end to end as described. Unlay one strand a considerable distance and fill up its space with opposite strand from other rope, and twist them together. Do the same with two strands on other rope. Open remaining strands, divide in two, make overhand knot with opposite halves, and lead ends as in short splice. Cut off the other two halves. Do the same with the other pairs of strands where twisted together. Before cutting off any of the half strands, first stretch, roll under the feet, and pound the rope well. This splicing does not increase the size of the rope and is used where the splice is to run through blocks.

222.—To make an eye splice. (Fig. 4.) Unlay one end for short distance, lay strands upon the standing part so as to form the desired sized eye. Put first end through the strand next to it. Put second over that strand and through second. Put third through third strand on other side of rope and so continue. This forms a permanent loop in end of rope.

223.—To sling a box or barrel. Lay a strong strap under it, spreading the parts, and pass one bight through the other; or make a long loop with a bowline and sling as shown on Pl. 31, Fig. 9. If one head is out stand barrel up, put one part of a strap under middle of bottom, take a half hitch over top with each part just over bilge hoops and exactly opposite; or place rope under barrel, bring up over top, make overhand knot, open it out and slip each half down over hoops, fasten end to standing part with bowline. (Fig. 10.)

224.—Rack lashings (Figs. 11, 12 and 13) are made with a 1-3 in. rope, 18 ft. long, with a loop at one end, and a *rack stick* 2 ft. long,  $1\frac{1}{4}$  in. in diameter, having a cord 4 ft. long through one end, by passing the rope two or three times around the side rail and balk, and, after making it fast, twisting it tightly with the rack stick.

FIG.1.



*Pulley*

FIG.2



*Single block*

FIG.3.



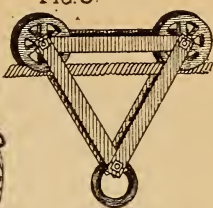
*Treble block*

FIG.4.



*Snatch block*

FIG.5.



*Ferry Block*

FIG.6.

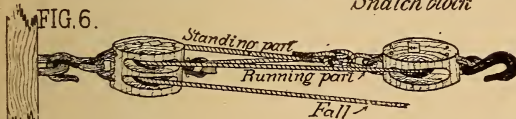


FIG.8.

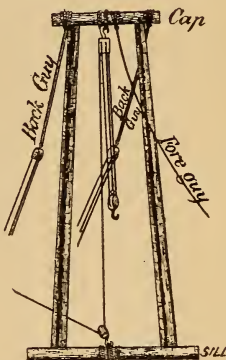


FIG.7.

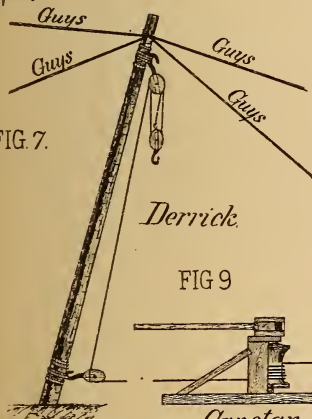
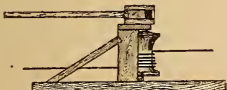
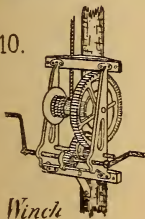


FIG 9

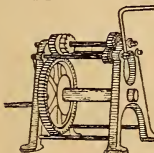


*Capstan*  
FIG 11

FIG.10.



*Winch*



*Crab*

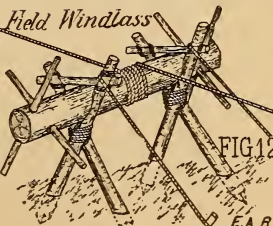


FIG.12.

E.A.R.

225.—**Transom lashing.** (Fig. 14.) The spars are laid across each other at right angles, a clove hitch is made on one of the spars, the end then twisted around its standing part, then three or more turns are taken around the spars, under one and over the other, keeping outside previous turns on one spar and inside on the other. Several frapping turns are then taken between the spars and the end fastened on one of the spars with a clove hitch. Used in lashing transoms to standards in bridge-building.

226.—**Shear lashing.** (Fig. 15.) The spars are laid parallel, a couple of inches apart, on a block, a clove hitch made on one spar, then five or six turns taken around both spars without riding. Several frapping turns are then taken between the spars and the end fastened on one of the spars with a clove hitch. This is used in rigging shears for hoisting heavy weights, etc.

227.—**Gin lashing.** (Fig. 16.) The three spars are laid parallel, a couple of inches apart, the butts of the two outside ones in one direction, that of the middle one in the opposite direction. A clove hitch is made on one spar, then five or six loose turns taken, passing over and under, without riding. Several frapping turns are taken in each interval and the end fastened on one of the spars with a clove hitch.

228.—**Blocks, Tackles, etc.** A *pulley* consists of a wheel, having a grooved rim for carrying a rope, turning in a frame. (Pl. 32, Fig. 1.)

A *block* (Figs. 2 and 3) consists of one or more grooved pulleys or sheaves turning on an axle, called a pin, mounted in a casing or shell, which is furnished with a hook, eye or strap on one end, by which the block may be attached to something, and sometimes with a becket on the other end for attaching ropes, etc. It is used to transmit power, or change direction of motion, by means of a rope or chain passing round the movable pulleys. Blocks are single, double, treble or fourfold, according as the number of

sheaves or pulleys is one, two, three or four. The size of blocks is expressed by the length of the shell in inches. A common style of Ferry Block is shown in Fig. 5.

A *snatch block* (Fig. 4) is a single block with a notch cut in one cheek so as to receive the standing part of a fall without the trouble of reeving and unreeving the whole.

A *running block* is one attached directly or indirectly to the object to be raised or moved; a *standing block* is one fixed to some permanent support.

229.—A *tackle* consists of two or more blocks with a rope rove through them for use in hoisting.

230.—The parts of all ropes between the points of fastening and sheaves are called *standing parts*; the parts between the sheaves are called *running parts*; the part to which the power is applied is called *the fall*.

231.—To *overhaul* a tackle is to separate the blocks; to *round in* is to bring the blocks closer together.

A tackle is said to be *block and block* or *two blocks* when the entire fall is hauled through so the blocks are in contact.

232.—Before reeving a rope in a block, it should be stretched out its full length. Tackle should not be allowed to twist; to prevent it, insert a bar in the block or between the running parts and use it as a lever to hold straight. If allowed to make one complete turn with two single blocks, the friction will increase the resistance about 40 per cent. Ropes should not be too large for blocks, the rule being, "*Small ropes and big blocks.*"

233.—**Power of Tackle.** Theoretically, the power necessary to just balance a weight, with a tackle of two blocks, is equal to the weight divided by the number of ropes at the running block, including the standing part if attached to it.

234.—To produce motion, however, a greater power is required



to overcome friction and stiffness of rope. It has been found by experiment that to do this about 10 per cent of the theoretical power necessary to balance must be added to itself for each of the sheaves over which the rope passes, the blocks being in good condition and well oiled. If not in good condition and not well oiled, the per cent may be as high as 30 for each sheave.

235.—The formula  $P = \frac{W \times 1.5}{R}$  is used to determine the power required to raise a weight with a simple tackle, in which  $P$  = the power required,  $W$  = the weight to be raised,  $S$  = the number of sheaves, and  $R$  = the number of ropes at running block, including standing part if attached to it. If it is required to find how great a weight a certain power will lift, the formula is  $W = \frac{P \times R}{1.5}$ . Power is gained only at the loss of time. The power moves as many times faster and farther than the weight as the number of ropes at the running block. No advantage is gained by using, in one fall, a greater number of sheaves than two treble blocks, but further advantage may be gained by a combination of blocks and tackles.\*

236.—A squad of men hauling on a fall exert a pull of about 80 lbs. (or half their weight) each, the fall being nearly horizontal.

237.—A Derrick (Fig. 7) usually consists of a single spar or leg, held up by four guys, and having a tackle lashed to the top, used for hoisting or lowering heavy bodies within a circle whose diameter equals  $\frac{3}{4}$  the height of the spar. When made of two legs (Fig. 8), they are mortised into a cap on top and a sill at the bottom, only two guys being required, a fore and back, but three are better, one fore and two back. The weight can only swing between the legs. The holdfasts for the guys should be at a distance from foot of derrick at least twice its height. The foot

---

\*The formula  $P = \frac{W \times 1.5}{R}$  is merely a simplified form of the equation  $P = (W + \frac{1}{10} W S) \div R$ . (See par. 234.)



# PLATE 33.

FIG. 1.

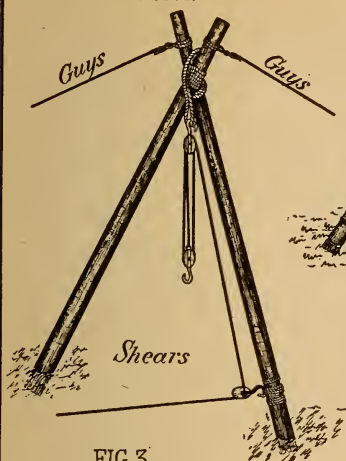


FIG. 2.

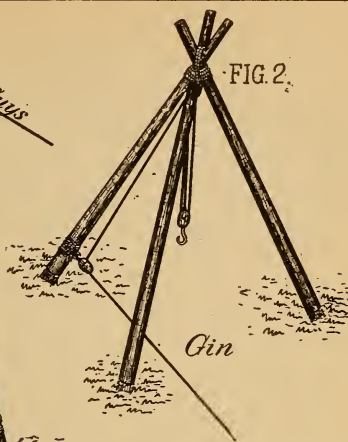
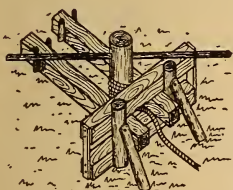


FIG. 3.



Field Capstan

FIG. 4.

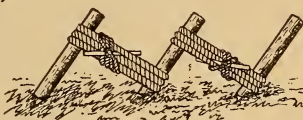
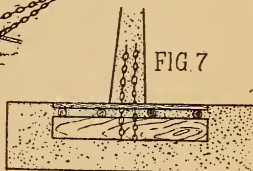


FIG. 5.

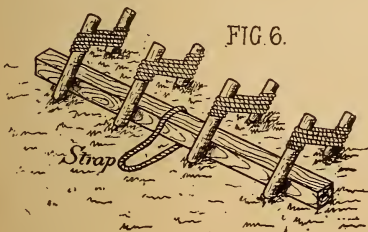


FIG. 7.



Plan.

FIG. 6.



Section.



should be secured from slipping by being let into a hole in the ground or otherwise.

**238.—Shears** (Pl. 33, Fig. 1) consist of two spars, of a size suitable for the weight to be raised, lashed together at the cross.

A tackle is fastened at the lashing by a strap passed around it or otherwise, the hook moused, and holdfasts are required as for two-legged derrick.

Two-legged derricks and shears should not lean to exceed 1-3 of their height, and each leg should have about  $\frac{1}{2}$  this inclination, or 1-6 their height.

**239.—A Gin** (Fig. 2) is a tripod formed of three poles. The two outside ones are called legs, the third one the *pry-pole*. Gins require no guys. Weights can only be lifted vertically.

**240.—In using derricks, shears, and gins, the fall is generally led through a snatch-block lashed on a leg near the bottom, thence to a crab, windlass, or capstan. Derricks frequently have fastened on their legs a winch for transmitting the power. (Pl. 32, Fig. 10.)**

**241.—A Windlass** (Fig. 12) consists of a horizontal axis fastened in a frame and turned by means of cranks or handles. The rope may either be fastened to the axis or passed two or three times around it, hauled taut, the free end being held, and taken in by men in the rear.

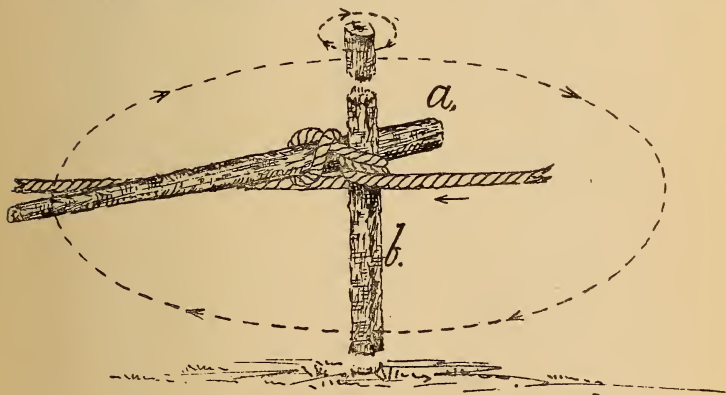
**242.—A Capstan** (Pl. 32, Fig. 9, and Pl. 33, Fig. 3) consists of an upright barrel, either smooth or ribbed, arranged about a spindle. Above the barrel is the head with holes to receive the ends of levers or bars by which the barrel is revolved. The rope is passed and held as explained for a windlass.

**243.—Holdfasts** are stout wooden stakes driven into the ground, or other arrangements used for securing purposes.

An essential point to be considered before moving or suspending heavy weights is the nature and condition of the securing

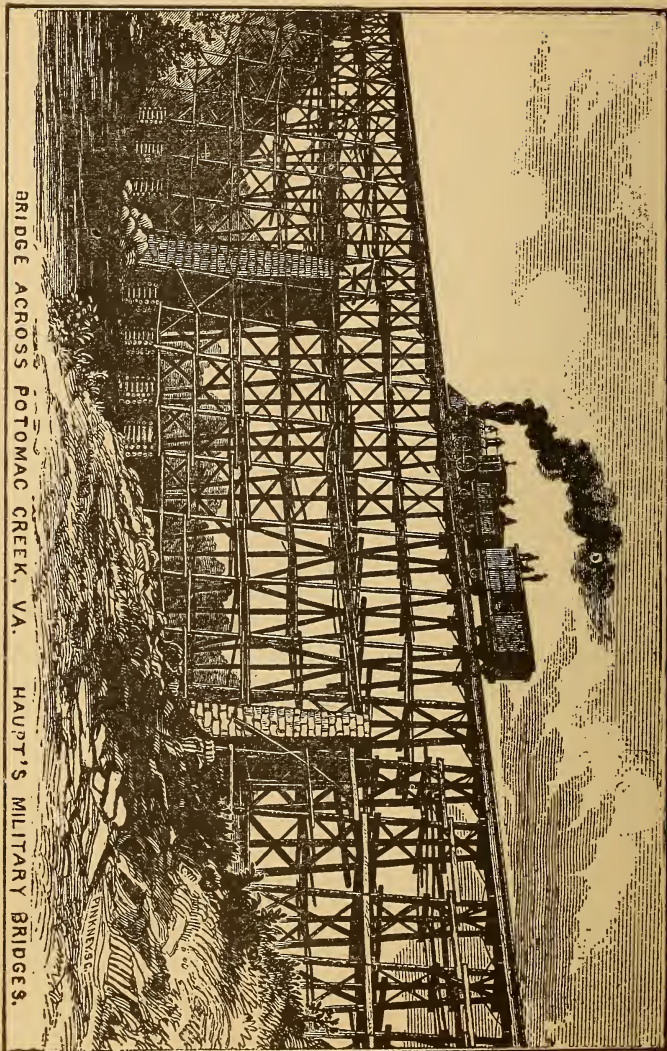
points, together with the strain that will be brought upon them. In the first instance, it is better to make them more secure than seems to be absolutely necessary, as, when they once begin to give way, it is difficult to strengthen them. Pl. 33, Figs. 4, 5, 6 and 7, show some of the various methods of making them, also Pl. 40a.

**243a.**—An improvised Field Capstan, which is but an adaptation of the Spanish windlass, is shown in cut. One end of the rope is made fast to the object which is to be moved and the other end to a holdfast. A lever, *a*, is inserted in a bight of the rope and one end of it placed against an upright bar, *b*. The lever is then carried round and round the bar, which revolves and gradually winds the rope upon itself as it approaches the holdfast. The bar *b* can be held upright more readily if the lever *a* is long enough for men to work at both ends of it.



BRIDGE ACROSS POTOMAC CREEK, VA.

HAUPT'S MILITARY BRIDGES.



## CHAPTER XV.—Spar Bridges.

244.—Military Bridges are not required to fulfill all the conditions of ordinary bridges. They are constructed for special and immediate purposes, usually with unskilled labor, and of such materials as can be procured on or near the spot. That the bridge built shall be strong enough to bear the heaviest load intended to be crossed is the first requisite; celerity and simplicity of construction next.

245.—Pl. 34 is an illustration of what was done in building Military Railroad Bridges under unfavorable circumstances in time of war with troops of the line, very few of whom were mechanics, many could not even handle an ax, none were trained to the duty, and none were engineer troops. This bridge was built by General Haupt over Potomac Creek, Va., during the Rebellion, and was 80 ft. high and 400 ft. long. It consisted of three tiers of trestles on top of cribs 12 ft. high. The timber used was chiefly round sticks, cut in the woods near by, and put together without bolts, simply with spikes and wooden pins, and when finished, was crossed by 10 to 20 heavily loaded trains per day. This kind of work, however, properly belongs to a special construction corps, but it falls to the lot of the officers and men who first arrive at a stream on the ordinary roads, where there are no means of crossing, to construct an improvised bridge with such tools and of such materials as may be available.

246.—The plans and expedients which follow have been selected with a view to their being types of bridges that can be constructed by troops having no other tools than axes and augers, and such materials as growing trees found in the vicinity, and beams, boards, ropes, iron dogs, wire, nails, etc., obtained from neighboring houses and towns. The purposes for which the bridge is to



be used,\* the nature of the crossing,\*\* velocity of stream, and kind of bottom, will determine its strength, kind, size, etc.

247.—For a common road bridge, the load is assumed to be a maximum when covered with men, estimated at 100 lbs.\*\*\* to the square foot, plus the weight of the bridge, usually taken at about 80 lbs. per lineal foot. For reasons which are evident, the bridge should be as short as possible, with good approaches. Swampy, high, or steep banks should be avoided.

248.—Bridges usually take their names from some part of their construction, as *Trestle, Truss, Pile, Suspension, or Floating Bridges*. The distance between supports (determined by the strength of the balks to bear the desired load) is called *the bay or span*, and the corresponding part of the bridge *the span or bent*. The *super-structure*, consisting of the stringers or balks, the floor, the side-rails and the fastenings, is of the same nature for each kind, as shown in Pl. 35, Fig. 1. The ends of the balks rest on cross-pieces of the supports called transoms; on the balks (of which there are usually five) are laid chess or poles, forming the floor; on top of the floor, over the outside balks, are laid side-rails or poles, which are securely fastened every 4 or 5 ft. to the balks beneath by rack lashings. Hand-rails (Fig. 2) should always be provided on each side of the roadway. The usual width of military bridges is 9 ft. in the clear, between side-rails; 6 ft. will

---

\*That is, for crossing loads of various kinds, as infantry only, or infantry and cavalry, or all arms, wagon trains, etc.

\*\*That is, marshy ground, or high and steep banks, or difficult approaches, etc.

\*\*\*Trautwine, in latest edition, says 100 lbs. per sq. ft for crowds is sufficient, 120 lbs. having been obtained only by a most careful wedging of men on test scales; that ordinary crowding never exceeds 84 lbs. per sq. ft., but recommends 100 lbs. to provide for impact and increase; or, for spans less than 150 feet, take 100 lbs. per sq. ft. for roadway and 80 lbs. for sidewalks; and for spans over 150 feet take 80 lbs. per sq. ft. for roadway and 60 lbs. for sidewalks.



answer for Infantry in column of twos, and Cavalry by file; 2.5 ft. for Infantry in single file.

249.—For determining the strength of the materials to be used, all errors should be on the side of safety. The practical method is to place the ends of the timber on low supports, as far apart as they will be in bridge; as many men as can then step on it and jump up and down; or it is otherwise arranged so as to bring as great a load upon it as it will have to bear at any time in bridge.

Where small poles of the usual number would not be strong enough, a greater number must be used until the desired strength is gained.

250.—Transoms must be strong enough to bear all the load that may be brought upon one bay of the bridge, considered as distributed dead loads on the transom. In bridges, loads are designated as *dead loads* or *live loads*. The *dead loads* are usually the weights of the bridges or bents themselves.\* The *live loads* are those temporary extraneous loads that may come upon or pass over the bridge, as pedestrians, animals, wagons, etc. The *dead loads* are usually distributed uniformly along the span. The *live loads* are usually more or less concentrated and moving.

251.—The extraneous loads in pounds, concentrated at the center, which will just break a beam resting on two points of support, may be approximately computed by the formula  $\frac{bd^2}{1} \times C - \frac{w}{2}$  in which  $b$  = the breadth of the beam in inches,  $d$  = its depth in inches,  $l$  = the distance between supports in feet,  $w$  = the

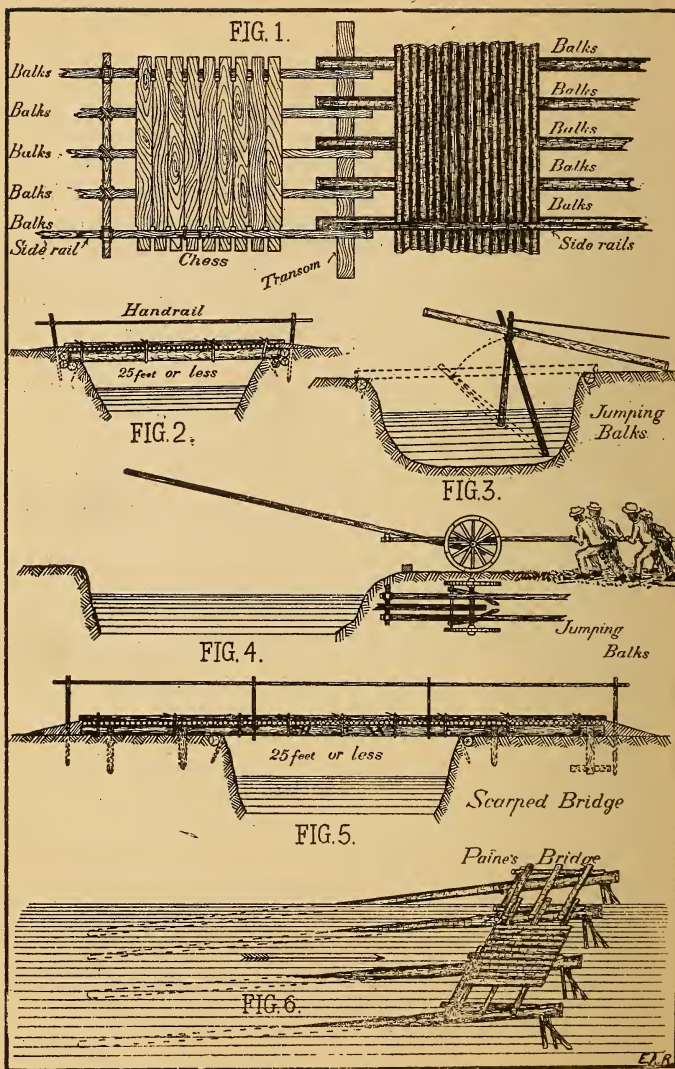
---

\*Table of weights in pounds of some materials used in figuring *dead loads* of a bridge:

Iron, 3.33 lbs. per lineal foot of a bar 1 inch in area.

Steel, 3.4 lbs. per lineal foot of a bar 1 inch in area.

Timber, 4.0 lbs. per foot, board measure; oak, 3.5 lbs.; creosoted, 5 lbs.; spruce and white pine, 3.5 lbs.; cedar, 3 lbs.



weight of the beam in pounds, and  $C$  = a constant in pounds for the material of the beam.\*

For temporary structures, the permissible load in pounds, concentrated at the center, which a beam may safely bear, may in general be taken as 1-5 of the breaking load as given by the formula above. For important or lasting structures, only 1-6 or 1-8 of the breaking load, as given by the formula, should be taken. The formula gives the breaking load for rectangular beams;\* to obtain the breaking load for timbers or logs, take 6-10 of what the formula gives for a square beam one side of which equals the mean diameter of the timber. The mean diameter being used because such a span, if overloaded, will break at the center instead of at the small end.

**252.**—*Weight brought on a bridge by the passage of troops*, taken as distributed live load for Infantry and Cavalry: Infantry in column of twos or fours, about 225 lbs. per lineal foot. Infantry when crowded at a check in fours, about 550 lbs. per lineal foot. Cavalry in column of twos, about 230 lbs. per lineal foot. Cavalry when crowded at a check, about 350 lbs. per lineal foot. When Artillery carriages cross a bridge, the weight is not equally distrib-

---

\*Table of constants  $C$  for use in the formula, which constants are the center-breaking loads in pounds for well-seasoned beams of the various materials 1 inch square and resting on two points of support 1 foot apart. For unseasoned or green beams these numbers would be less.

Ash, American, white. . . . .	650	Locust. . . . .	700
Ash, black. . . . .	600	Mahogany. . . . .	750
Beech, American. . . . .	850	Maple. . . . .	750
Birch, American, black. . . . .	550	Oak, red and black. . . . .	850
Birch, American, yellow. . . . .	850	Oak, white and live. . . . .	600
Cedar, American, white. . . . .	250	Pine, Georgia. . . . .	850
Chestnut. . . . .	450	Pine, white. . . . .	450
Elm, American, white. . . . .	650	Poplar. . . . .	550
Hemlock. . . . .	500	Spruce. . . . .	450
Hickory. . . . .	800	Walnut. . . . .	550

uted, but is greatest when the wheels bearing the heaviest load are on the center.\*

253.—A uniformly distributed dead load produces only one-half the strain of an equal dead load concentrated at the center. A moving or live load produces twice the strain of a dead load. A uniformly distributed live load equals a concentrated dead load.

Table of Constants C, for finding the breaking load of various materials by the formula  $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{bd^2}{l} \times C$  when concentrated at center of beam supported at both ends. From Trautwine's "Engineer's Pocket Book":

Ash, white. . . . .	.650	Hemlock. . . . .	.400	Oak, red and	
Ash, swamp. . . . .	.400	Hickory. . . . .	.700	black. . . . .	.550
Ash, black. . . . .	.300	Hickory, pig nut.	.500	Pine, white. . . . .	.450
Beech, white. . . . .	.450	Locust. . . . .	.600	Pine, yellow. . . . .	.500
Beech, red. . . . .	.550	Mahogany. . . . .	.450	Pine, pitch. . . . .	.550
Birch. . . . .	.450	Maple. . . . .	.550	Poplar. . . . .	.550
Cedar. . . . .	.250	Oak, white and		Spruce. . . . .	.450
Chestnut. . . . .	.450	live. . . . .	.600	Sycamore. . . . .	.500
Elm. . . . .	.350			Walnut. . . . .	.450

254.—To determine the weight of a beam or a timber, com-

*Kind of Vehicle Loaded.	Total Weight.	Wt. on Front.	Wheels. Hind.	Distance bet. Axles, Inches.
Gatling gun. . . . .	2635	1415	1220	77
3" field gun and limber. .	4270	1830	2440	145
3" field limber and caisson. . . . .	4435	1810	2625	117.5
3" battery and forge wagon. . . . .	4405	1680	2725	117.5
3" store wagon. . . . .	3415	1055	2360	117.5
3.2" field gun and limber	3960	1895	2065	117
3.2" field limber and caisson. . . . .	4925	1975	2950	112
5" siege rifle and limber	8985	3920	5065	97
7" siege howitzer. . . . .	8605	3410	5195	102

pute the number of cubic feet in it and multiply by the weight of a cubic foot of the same material.\*

255.—The area in square feet of the middle cross-section of a log or timber is equal to: the square of the middle or mean circumference in feet multiplied by .07958; or the square of the middle or mean diameter in feet multiplied by .7854; or 1-2 the middle diameter multiplied by 1-2 the middle circumference, both in feet; or the square of the middle radius in feet multiplied by 3.1416; or the square of 1-5 the middle circumference multiplied by twice the length, both in feet.\*\*

256.—The number of cubic feet in a rectangular beam is computed by multiplying together the length, breadth, and depth, all in feet. The number of cubic feet in a log or timber is computed by multiplying the area in square feet of its middle cross-section by its length in feet.

257.—When spars are used for barks, they must be arranged so as to have all butts or all tips together on a transom. They should have good overlap and be well lashed to each other and to the transoms. To allow for settling, the center is generally made higher by about 1-30 the span.

\*Weight in pounds per cubic foot of various materials:

Ash... ..38 to 47	Spruce... ..31	Gravel and sand..
Cedar... ..35	Sycamore... ..37	.. ..90 to 130
Chestnut... ..40	Walnut... ..38	Iron, cast... ..450
Cottonwood... ..35	Asphalt... ..110	Iron, wrought... ..487
Hickory... ..43 to 53	Brick... ..135	Lead... ..710
Maple... ..48	Clay... ..120	Steel... ..488
Oak... ..45 to 60	Concrete... ..130	Stone... ..150
Pine... ..34 to 65	Earth... ..72 to 120	

Green timbers weigh from 1-5 to 1-2 more than given in table.

\*\*The diameter = the circumference 3.1416; the circumference = the diameter  $\times$  3.1416.

Conversion Table.

1 inch = .083 ft.	5 inches = .416 ft.	9 inches = .75 ft.
2 inches = .167 ft.	6 inches = .5 ft.	10 inches = .833 ft.
3 inches = .25 ft.	7 inches = .583 ft.	11 inches = .917 ft.
4 inches = .333 ft.	8 inches = .667 ft.	12 inches = 1.00 ft.

For a bridge constructed as in Fig. 2, Plate 35, with six barks



# PLATE 36.

FIG. 1.

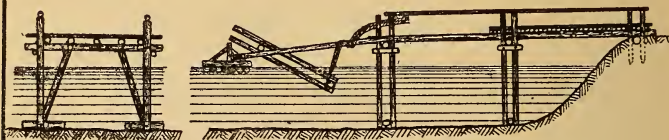


FIG. 2.

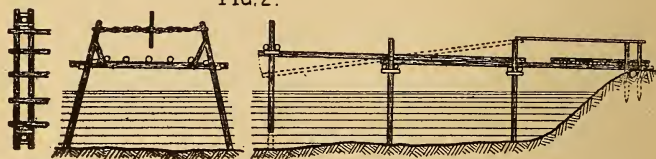


FIG. 3.

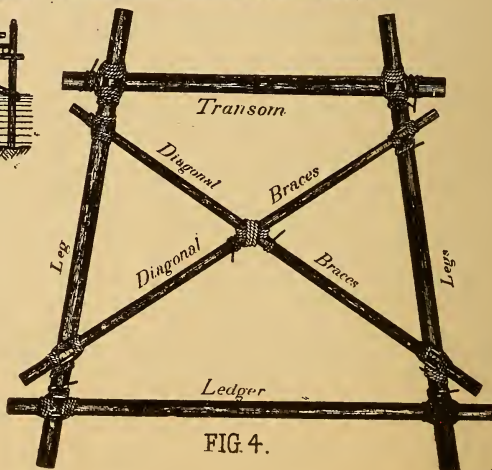
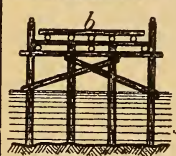
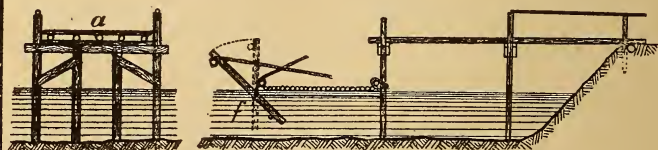


FIG. 4.





**258.—Stringer Bridge.** For spans of 25 ft. or less, if timber is available, the simplest form of stringer bridge could be built, as in Fig. 2, of 6 balks, 30 ft. long, reaching clear across, covered with small poles 4 to 6 in. in diameter, 12 ft. long, for a floor. Side-rails would be laid on the floor over the outside balks and either lashed or pinned to the balks. Hand-rails would be as shown, or a rope stretched across would answer. Time of construction—1 hour. The balks could be jumped across as shown in either Figs. 3 or 4.

**259.—Scarped Bridge.** If stringers of length to reach across cannot be obtained or are too heavy to handle easily, a scarped bridge as in Fig. 5 might be made, requiring only axes and augers. The shore stringers, 25 ft. long, 10 in. in diameter, six on each shore, have their bridge ends scarped on upper side 18 in., then pushed out 10 ft., their shore ends being well anchored down and loaded with roadway. Six short stringers, 8 ft. long, 10 in. in diameter, three on each shore, scarped 18 in. on under side of each end, are passed over gap and laid on shore stringers. Two 2-in.

---

resting on supports 25 feet apart, to determine the safe load it will carry, the process is as follows:

The balks being of yellow pine, 10 inches in diameter at the middle section, 25 feet between supports, the weight of each balk will be  $.8332 \times .7854 \times 25 \times 40 = 545$  lbs. =  $W$ ;  $\frac{W}{2} = 272.5$  lbs., and the formula gives for the safe extraneous load on each balk concentrated at the center  $6-10 \times 1-5 \times \times 500 - 272.5 = 2127.5$  lbs.

Calculating for five balks on the supposition that the two outside ones receive only half the load of the center ones, they will bear  $5 \times 2127.5 = 10637.5$  lbs. concentrated at the center. From 10637.5 lbs. deduct  $\frac{1}{2}$  the weight of the 75 four-inch poles, each 12 feet long, forming the floor, obtained thus,  $75 \times \frac{1}{2} \times .333 \times .7854 \times 12 \times 40 = 1570.8$  lbs. :  $10637.5 - 1570.8 = 9066.7$  lbs., the dead load the bridge will safely bear concentrated at the center—the live distributed load it will safely bear. Infantry in column of twos or squads would produce a live distributed load of only about 5625 lbs., and cavalry about 5750 lbs. Infantry crowded at a check possibly 13750 lbs. and cavalry 8750 lbs., approaching the condition of a dead distributed load, of which the bridge would bear  $2 \times 9066.7$  lbs. = 18133.4 lbs.; the bridge will be amply strong.

auger holes are bored at each end through both stringers and wooden pins driven through, and the flooring completed.

This bridge is of the cantilever type, having two projecting supports connected by a central part. Being anchored below, the roadway is laid directly on the cantilever balks and connecting piece. If counterpoise weights had been placed on the ends of the cantilevers, then transoms would have been laid on the cantilevers to support the road balks to carry the road over the counterpoise weights.

A timber used as a cantilever will support only 1-4 of what it would with the same span resting on two points of support, while the deflections and vibrations will be many times greater. If the cantilevers from opposite sides meet and are fastened rigidly together, the safe load will be doubled.

**260.—Paine's Bridge.** (Fig. 6.) If timber is abundant and stream not over 6 ft. deep, select trees up stream. Fell, and trim off branches. Bore two 3-in. auger holes near butt ends 3 in. apart, making an angle of  $30^{\circ}$  with each other, and a third hole, making an angle of  $45^{\circ}$ , between them nearer the butt. Cut and insert in outside holes legs long enough to raise the butt the desired height of bridge. Float down stream, butt end first, to position of bridge. On arriving in line of bridge, the log is turned on its feet, the tip sinking to bottom. The brace leg is then inserted down stream in last hole, making an angle of  $45^{\circ}$ . Log after log is thus placed, balks rolled up and put into position and leveled, and the floor laid in the usual way.

**261.—Trestle Bridges.** For spans of 25 ft. or over, when bottom can be touched clear across, some form of *trestle bridge* will be the easiest of construction.

**262.—The Six-legged Trestle.** In Pl. 36, Fig. 1, the trestle consists of 6 legs, 4 vertical and 2 inclined; the two vertical legs on each side are fastened to two short sills by 2-in. pins. The ends of the two inclined legs are cut on an angle, driven into position, and

held by 2-in. pins passing through the transom from above. They serve as braces and supports. A short horizontal piece pinned to each pair of vertical legs supports the transom, which is also pinned. On top of the projecting ends of the vertical legs a cap piece can be pinned to form hand-rails. The trestle is made on shore, floated to its place in bridge, and erected with the aid of a float held at the proper distance from last trestle by a pole on each side, having the lengths of the spans marked by pins which engage the transoms of the trestles. The transoms are only temporarily lashed in position at first, but after the trestle is erected in its proper place the proper height for it is determined by bringing the 2 distance poles horizontal, or a little above the horizontal if a camber is to be given, then pinning or spiking on the short horizontal pieces. If accurate soundings have been made across the stream on the lines of the legs of the trestles, then the trestles can be completed on shore before launching. The balks are then run across and pinned and roadway finished. If there occurs unequal settling, the roadway can be raised by blocking up under the transoms on the short horizontal pieces.

**263.—The Tie-block Trestle.** Fig. 2 is another form of trestle, consisting of only two legs, about 8 in. in diameter. The transoms are in pairs, across which two blocks are spiked at each end into notches, as shown. This trestle can be used on hard, uneven bottom. The trestle is formed on shore, held in shape by the rope, and rack stick across the top, then floated into place. Two poles, longer than two spans, are then run out; on the projecting ends are pins to prevent the trestle slipping off, and on near end a rope for fastening to transoms of second trestle back. Having caught the trestle on the ends of the poles under the transom, it can be raised to a vertical position by men bearing down on the rear, and held by means of ropes; it is then lowered into position, legs in a vertical plane. The transoms are then adjusted to their proper elevation by striking on under side, if

too low, then tightening rope; or by slackening the rope and striking on upper side if too high. When properly adjusted, the rope is tightened, pinching the legs between the blocks; the braces are then spiked or pinned on, the rope removed, the balks laid and pinned, and the poles shoved out for the next trestle.

**264.—The Four-legged Capped Trestle.** Where sufficient lumber can be procured, the most expeditious and probably the best method will be as follows: (Fig. 3.) With the balks and chesses for each span, form a raft, or as many as may be desired, the length of a span. Form a trestle by placing four legs parallel and 4 ft. apart from center to center. Spike a pole across near the bottom and one near the top to keep them together. The first, or any trestle, having been set, float a raft against it and make fast; bring the trestle to be set up to the other end; force the legs under the raft a distance a little less than the depth of the water. Tie a rope around the outside legs at "f" with a bow-knot, to hold from slipping under, and others to the top pole, by means of which it is raised to a vertical position, when it is dropped to the bottom by slackening off on lower ropes. As soon as it is dropped, another raft is brought up, tied, and another trestle put into position, and so continued. Each trestle, as soon as it is in position, is then capped by nailing two boards horizontally on opposite sides of legs with tops in same plane. (Fig. 3. a.) Braces are then spiked on the legs. Saw off the two inside posts even with the tops of boards. Spike a 2-in. plank across the top of posts and boards. Lay the balks, spike them, remove the raft, and move it into position to raise another trestle. If boards cannot be procured for capping, round sticks may be used as in Fig. 3. b. by cutting the two inside legs off 5 or 6 in. above the horizontal poles, then spiking two short pieces across the poles against the outside legs and one in center on which the cap piece or transom will rest. Advantages are—work can be commenced in any number of places at the same time; no accurate soundings required so long as poles are sufficiently long; cap-



ping and bracing do not retard work; different squads can be at work at same time, etc.

**265.—The Two-legged Trestle.** If only axes and rope are available, trestles may be made by lashing their parts together. (Fig. 4.) Having determined the height of the roadway above the bottom of the stream, mark this height from the butts on both legs, then mark the position of the transom on the legs, allowing for the thickness of the balks; also mark on the transom the width of roadway between side-rails plus 3 ft., for points of crossing of legs, the distance apart of legs depending on width of roadway. Give the legs a splay outwards at the bottom of 1-6 and mark on legs and ledger the points of lashing. All being ready, lay the transom on a couple of supports 3 or 4 in. high, inside the position of the legs, lay on the legs in their proper positions, on the legs lay the ledger. With the square lashing fasten the four points of crossing. Next, lay on the braces, butts and one tip on same side as ledger and one tip on side of transom. Lash the butts with square lashings. Square the trestle by making the diagonals equal, measuring from the center of ledger lashing on one leg to the center of transom lashing on opposite leg. When these diagonals are made equal the tips are lashed with square lashings and the braces at the middle with a cross lashing. Ledger and braces can be of rather light timber. The trestles can be floated into position and raised as already described. or run out and down from the end of the bridge, which is more difficult. They are kept vertical by lashing the balks to the transoms, and longitudinal bracing from one to another.

**266.—A Three-legged Trestle** (Pl. 37, Fig. 1) may be made by first lashing two legs together considerably higher than the roadway is to be, then lashing the pry-pole just below to one of the legs, all with shear lashings. Stand the trestle up, spread out legs till butts rest on the vertices of an equilateral triangle whose sides are  $\frac{1}{2}$  height of trestle, then lash three light ledgers



to the legs by round lashings. On the outside of the pry-pole and leg to which it is fastened are lashed short pieces, by square lashings, on which rest two longer pieces, separated by the legs, which are lashed together by the shear lashing. On these longer pieces rest the transoms. With these trestles lighter material can be used; they stand without bracing, but are difficult to place; accommodate themselves to inequalities of surface; the roadway may be readily raised or lowered. If material is available, they are readily made with spikes.

**267.—The Four-legged Trestle, second form.** (Fig. 2.) Two two-legged trestles are made, one being 12 to 18 in. narrower than the other, depending on the size of legs, so that they will lock when put together. The transoms are placed on same side as ledgers, instead of on opposite sides. The butts of the single trestles are placed a distance apart equal to half the height, then locked at the top, the transoms lashed at the ends, longitudinal braces lashed at the ledgers, the tips tied and racked together. Sometimes used with light material, also as steadying points in a long bridge of two-legged trestles. One similar to it can be made of sawed timber and spikes and placed in position as shown in Figs. 3 and 4, if the materials are available.

**267a.—Portable Timber Wharf.** As shown by Pl. 36A, the material used in the construction of this wharf is dimension timber for trestle legs, diagonal braces, transoms, balks, and chesses. The shoes for trestle legs are of steel. Bags, which are to be filled with sand or gravel, are also provided.

*Bearing Shoes:* The bearing shoe is constructed in the form of a flat cone with vertex down, as shown in Fig. 4. The shoe is approximately 4 feet in diameter and 12 inches in depth. It is formed of plates of medium steel about  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch in thickness. The attachments for securing the end of the trestle leg to the bearing shoe should be bolted as shown; this for convenience of detaching for transportation purposes.

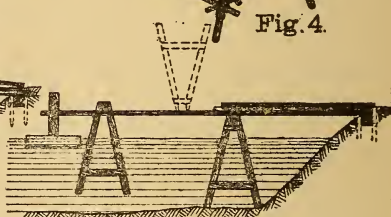
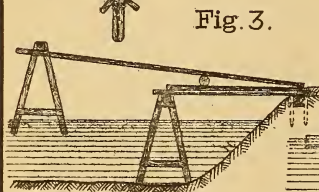
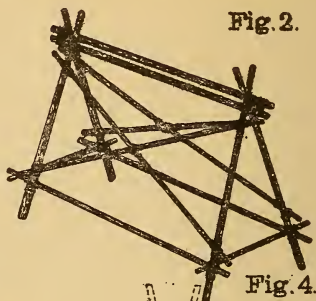
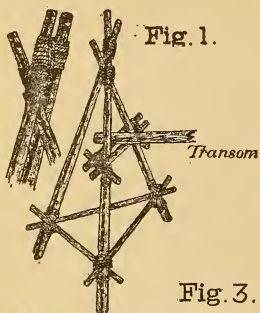


Fig. 5.

Fig. 6.

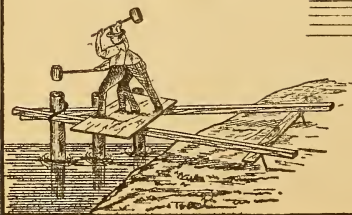
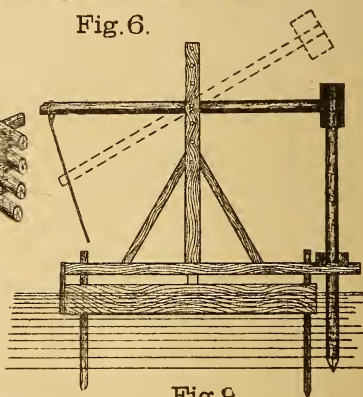
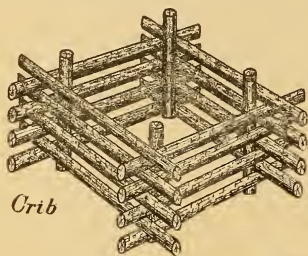


Fig. 1

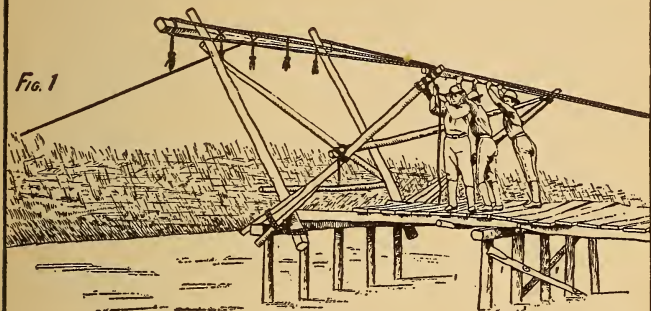


Fig. 2.

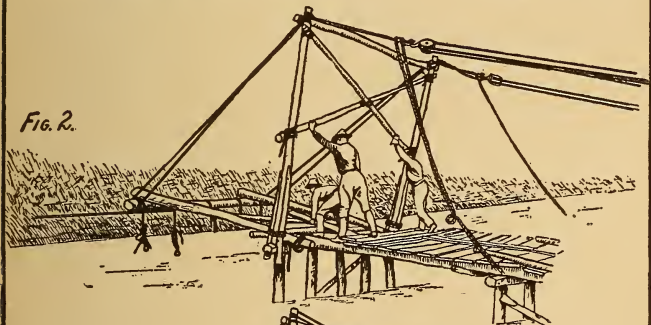
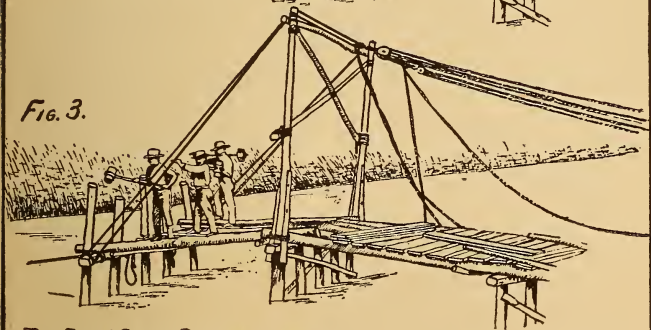


Fig. 3.



THE REES' BRIDGE EXTENSION METHOD.

PLATE 38.

FIG. 1.

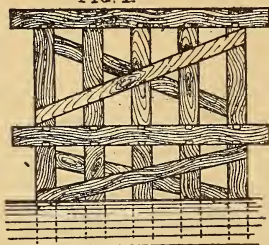


FIG. 2.

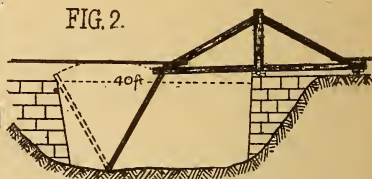


FIG. 3.

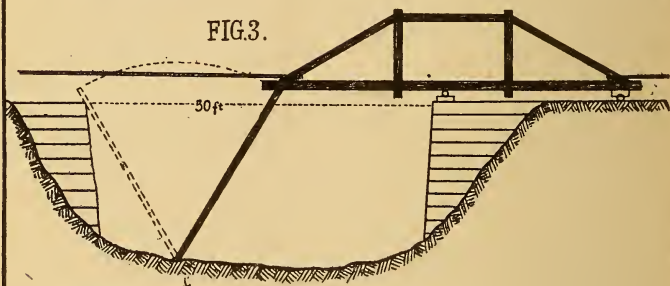
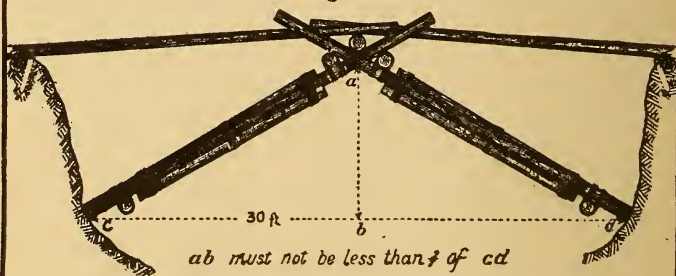


FIG. 4. *Single Lock.*



*Trestle Legs:* The trestle legs consist of 4x10-inch pieces. They are built up in lengths ranging from 12 to 36 feet. The middle member is to be secured to the other two near the lower end by means of a bolt. This admits of its use as a diagonal brace, after the leg is lowered into position.

The other pieces of timber, when assembled and attached to bearing shoe, should be lashed together with a small rope while the leg is being moved and lowered into position.

*Transoms:* The transoms are formed of two 4x14-inch timbers, placed one above the other, as shown in Fig. 2. This arrangement is made in order that the timbers may be easily placed by men in small boats or on rafts; it also facilitates attachment to trestle legs, and admits of easy adjustment vertically.

The trestles of the bridge thus formed are placed about 12 feet apart, constituting a bay. Upon these the balks and chesses are placed as shown.

*To Build the Wharf:* The construction should start at the outer end, in order to obtain proper depth of water, and proceed toward the shore. The first four trestle legs should be lowered from the deck of a boat or lighter by such means as may be at hand, and approximately located. They should then be adjusted to position by men in small boats. The bags of sand or gravel are then lowered, as indicated in Fig. 2, the diagonal braces connected, and the transoms placed in position and bolted, completing the two trestles. The balks are then placed, and the chesses placed thereon together with the side rails.

The structure,\* consisting as it does of certain units, can be extended any desired length, within the limits of material. The head of the wharf may also be extended as shown.

---

\*List of material required, under normal conditions, for each one hundred lineal feet of wharf:

120 pieces of timber  $2\frac{1}{2}$ " (or 3")  $\times$  10"  $\times$  18' for chesses;

48 pieces of timber 3"  $\times$  10"  $\times$  16' for balks;



268.—**Crib Piers.** In sluggish streams with muddy bottoms and not over 6 ft. deep, where timber is abundant, crib piers may be used. (Fig. 5.) The cribs are built in the woods, the foundation logs being pinned together, the others simply notched. The logs then marked, taken down, carried or floated into position, and rebuilt, poles being generally set to mark the corners. As the crib is built up it gradually sinks, or a tray may be formed inside and loaded with stones. The balks and flooring are laid as usual.

269.—**Pile Bridges** are scarcely adapted to an emergency, from the time and preparation required in their construction, but on lines of communication, from the character of the bottom or the dangers from floating objects, resort may be had to them.

270.—For driving the piles, a monkey (Fig. 8) is made of a block of wood 3 ft. long, 12 in. in diameter, with four 1.5 in. pins at top and four on the sides for handles. Four men standing on a platform on the pile drive it down, their own weight thus assisting, or they may be driven from a raft built as in Fig. 6. After the piles are driven they are straightened, braced, their tops sawed

- 
- 16 pieces of timber 4" × 14" × 18' for transoms;
  - 32 pieces of timber 4" × 10" × 22' (average) for trestle legs;
  - 16 pieces of timber 4" × 8" × 18' (average) for diagonal braces;
  - 16 pieces of timber 4" × 8" × 18' for longitudinal braces;
  - 200 lineal feet of 4" × 8" timber for side rail;
  - 32 pieces of blocking 4" × 10" × 3'.

Total, 12,500 feet B. M.

Total, 1,042 cubic feet.

Total approximate weight (hard pine), 46,890 lbs.

Total approximate weight (Oregon fir), 36,470 lbs.

The head of wharf is not materially different from the other portions. It will be noted, however, that provision has been made for protecting the face of wharf with 4" × 14" timber fenders.

In addition to the above material, 16 steel-bearing shoes will be required. These should be made of medium steel. Each shoe, exclusive of attaching plates, is estimated to weigh about 325 lbs. Each pair of attaching plates will weigh approximately 140 lbs.

Approximately 180 screw bolts (with washers) 1" × 14" in size, and 32 1" × 7½" bolts, will be required for each 100 feet of wharf. These bolts would weigh in the total about 850 lbs.

Empty bags should be carried for use as sand-bags. (This material is to be carried on a transport.)



off level, the caps placed on and pinned (Pl. 38, Fig. 1), and the roadway laid as usual. Piles near shore may be driven as in Fig. 7.

The following feasible method for extending the bridge,\* when piles have to be driven, may be used:

A rope is first passed across the stream, if possible, to be used as a front guy.

The piles for the first trestle are driven at the proper place for the first bay by some of the methods just referred to, or otherwise. These are then sawed off, capped, and braced, and the balks run out and placed in position. So much of a temporary working floor may then be laid as necessary.

The two outside balks for the next bay are then placed on the ground parallel to each other and as far apart as they will be in the bridge.

On top of these two balks, in its proper position, will be fastened, by spikes, iron dogs, trenails, drift pins, or rope, the cap or transom for the next trestle; also at about 2-3 the way down a small brace parallel to the cap, and a diagonal brace or two between. This constitutes the floor frame which is then carried onto the first bay, and the ends of the balks farthest from the cap are placed under the cap of the first trestle, and held by rope with clove or timber hitches around the balks, the rope passing over the top of the transom from the rear and fastened; these ropes, so fastened, acting as a kind of hinge for the frame when revolved into its permanent position. The fore guy is then made fast to the middle of the cap of this frame and back guys are fastened at each end of the cap. The frame is then revolved upward and forward until it is a little beyond the vertical, where it is held temporarily. A derrick frame is then brought forward. This derrick frame is made like the two-legged trestle (Plate 36, Fig. 4), except that the legs are parallel,

---

\*Devised by Major Thos. H. Rees, Corps of Engineers, U. S. A.

the cross braces extend down to only half the length of the legs, and the ledger is omitted. (Plate 40, Fig. 3.) The butts of the legs have projecting strips or poles fastened on front and back to make a fork on each to hold them on the caps when in use. These forked legs are then put against the cap of the first bay and raised until about at right angles to the floor frame just revolved, when the two are fastened together with the back guys. (Plate 37A, Fig. 1.) By pulling on the fore guy and raising up on the top of the derrick frame both are revolved until the floor frame is nearly horizontal, when it is held there temporarily. (Fig. 2.) A temporary working floor may then be laid; the piles are brought out to the end and lowered into position and lashed to the cap. The back guys are then eased off, letting the weight of the frame come upon the piles, which are then driven (Fig. 3), sawed off at the proper height, straightened up, and the cap fastened on top of them. The remaining balks of the second bay are put in place, another floor frame brought out, put in place and revolved as described, and the process continued.

271.—For crossings greater than 25 ft. and too deep to use any of the above forms, resort must be had to some form of *truss bridge*. The trusses may be put together either by lashing or with pins, or by combinations of both.

272.—Pl. 38, Fig. 2, represents the ordinary **King-post Truss** for spans up to 40 ft. The bridge is put together on the bank, then pushed forward half its length, using rollers under each truss, as shown. A trestle is then leaned forward from opposite bank, and, when truss is over it, the trestle is raised and the end of the truss carried over to the opposite bank.

The vertical timber in this bridge can be replaced by an iron rod by having the ends of the inclined braces abutting. The same is true of the Queen-post truss, except that the inclined braces abut against the horizontal piece.

If these trusses are turned upside down, then the inclined timbers can be replaced by iron rods, and a number of combinations may be used with iron rods for further bracing and strengthening the truss.

273.—Fig. 3 represents the **Queen-post Truss** for spans up to 50 ft. It is constructed and carried across similarly to the preceding one.

274.—Fig. 4 shows the **Single Lock** for spans of 30 ft. It consists of two frames similar to the two-legged trestle on Pl. 36, Fig. 4. A section of the gap is first marked out on the ground on each bank with the positions of the footings indicated. On these the legs are laid and the positions for lashing the transoms and ledgers marked. The frames are then put together opposite the position they are to occupy (one on each bank), butts towards the gap. One frame is made 15 to 18 in. wider than the other so they will lock, and the footings should be likewise prepared. The distance between legs at transom of narrower frame is at least 18 in. more than width of roadway between side-rails. With the above exceptions, the frames are made like the two-legged trestles. The splay of the legs is very slight, generally about 1 ft. between transom and ledger. Stout stakes are then driven at the rear, fore and back guys are attached to the tips of each frame, the fore guys crossed over the stream, those of narrower frame in center. Foot ropes are also attached to each leg near the butts with timber hitches and a turn taken around the stakes at the rear. The frames are then shoved over the banks till they balance (Pl. 40, Fig. 1), then brought to a vertical position by hauling on the fore guys, and lowered into their places by easing off on the foot ropes, after which they are pulled over and locked. A couple of balks are then run out, then the fork transom is put into place and the balks rested on it. The remainder of the balks are then run out, placed on the fork transom, lashed, and the roadway completed as usual. If good places for footings cannot be secured, then other means must be provided.

275.—For spans up to 45 or 50 ft., the **Double Lock** (Pl. 39, Fig. 1) may be used. In this it will be noticed that the balk-bearing transoms are not the transoms first lashed to the frames in making them, but those which are sent out after the frames are in position. This must be remembered in marking the positions of the transoms on the legs of the frames. In this the two frames are made as described for *the single lock*, except that they are of the same width. They are launched as described, and pulled forward until their tops are about 1-3 the span apart. Two straining beams are then run across, the road-bearing transoms fastened on top of them in the positions previously marked. The frames are held by the back guys until all is ready, when they are eased off and the bridge locked. The roadway is then laid as usual.

276.—For spans greater than 45 or 50 ft., where timber of sufficient size is obtainable, the **Single Sling** or **Treble Sling** may be used. The frames are made as has been described, with the following additional observations:

In the *Single Sling* (Fig. 2), in marking the positions of the different spans, the three locking pieces must be at least 9 or 10 ft. above the roadway. The fork piece is hauled into position by snatch blocks lashed to the top of each leg of narrower frame, after which the blocks are used to get the center transom temporarily into position, when it is slung by the ropes that are to hold it, by taking several turns around it and the locking pieces without riding, and afterwards twisted up to the proper height with a pole.

277.—In the **Treble Sling** (Fig. 3) there are three slung transoms, one from the forks and one from the standards on each side of the middle. The frames are constructed as already described. (Pl. 40, Fig. 2, being one in plan.) If necessary, the frames may be strengthened by additional braces on them and further braced back to the banks by ropes attached to holdfasts and otherwise

# PLATE 39.

## Double Lock

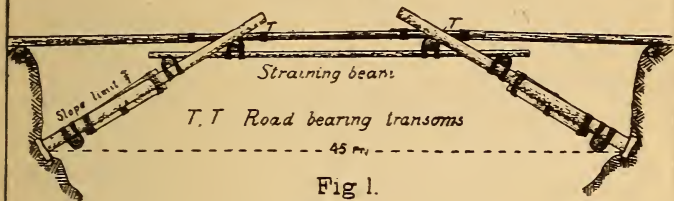


Fig 1.

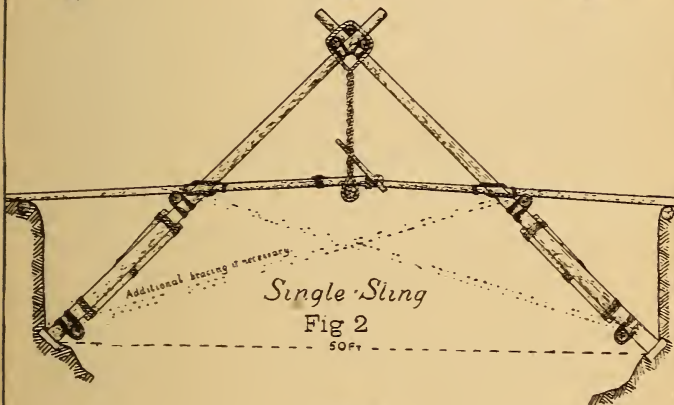


Fig 2

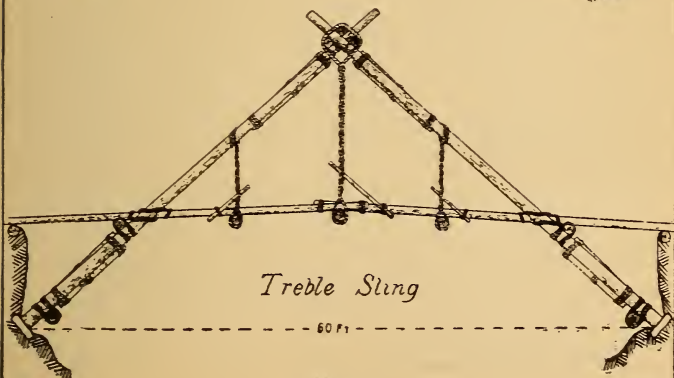
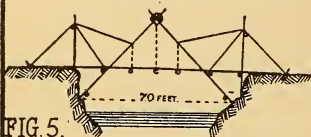
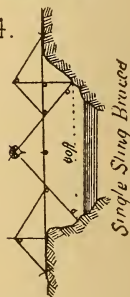
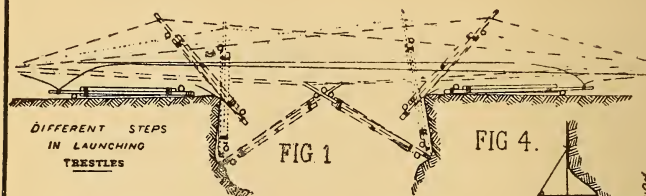


Fig. 3



# PLATE 40.



*Treble Sling Braced*

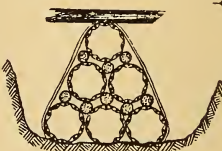


FIG. 9.

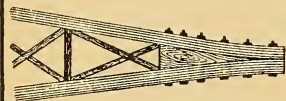
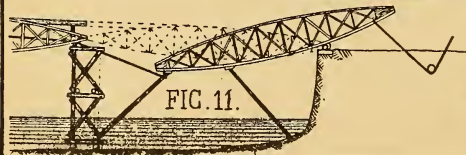
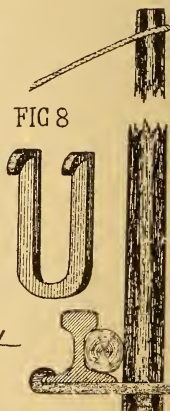


FIG. 8



*Haupt's Rail Twister*



as suggested on Pl. 40. Figs. 4 and 5, vertical braces being shown in Fig. 3.

278.—Other expedients for crossing small gaps are the use of wagons in various ways for supports, brushwood made into gabions, fascines, etc. (Figs. 6 and 7.)

279.—A light, portable truss (Fig. 11) can be made, where boards are obtainable, by describing two arcs of circles with radii 151 ft., on opposite sides of a 60 ft. chord, then driving stakes on the arcs at intervals of about 2 ft., against which 5 layers on top and 6 layers on bottom of boards 1 in. thick x 12 in. wide, breaking joints, are bent and securely nailed together every 4 in. with tenpenny nails. The lower side of truss is made one board thicker than the upper and is completed by driving 6 in. spikes through every 6 in. This truss will be about 6 ft. deep, and, allowing 2 ft. at each end for resting on supports, will bridge a span 56 ft.

The sides are connected every 5 or 6 ft. by vertical pieces of plank and two 1-in. iron rods, the latter on the sides of the verticals, towards the middle. If iron rods are not obtainable, rope or wire should be wrapped around both and twisted tightly. The angles at the ends are filled with wedge-shaped pieces and the ends securely bolted, hooped, or wrapped. (Fig. 9.) For greater rigidity, light diagonal braces may be inserted in the panels. The top can be made straight instead of curved if so desired.

These trusses are used in pairs and are applicable to a variety of structures and to spaces of considerable width. Two such trusses with a central support of trestles, crib-work, or boats, may be used for 116 ft. (Fig. 11); three such trusses for 176 ft., etc. In experiments with such trusses in bridges, 1800 lbs. per lineal foot has been applied before breaking; and by covering the boards with pitch and tar before nailing together, inserting  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. bolts in pairs every foot of length on lower side, and nailing boards against the edges, 3500 lbs. per lineal foot was applied before breaking.

**280.—Suspension Bridges.** For spans greater than 60 ft., and when timbers for frames cannot be procured, some form of suspension bridge might be used. Although applicable to longer spans, and the materials more easily transported, they take longer to make than other kinds.

The cables may be of iron chains, iron, steel or fibrous ropes, or of boards nailed together.

**281.—**Pl. 40a, Fig. 1, shows one with the roadway hung below the cables, with a camber 1-30. At the center, the roadway should be at least 1 ft. below the cables. The width of roadway between side rails should be only slightly wider than wagon-wheel tracks. (Fig. 2.) On the banks, the cables are supported by timber piers (Fig. 3), having a broad cap (Fig. 4), rounded on top, over which they pass at a distance apart of 9.5 ft. The cables must be securely anchored at the rear to heavy logs sunk 4 or 5 ft. in the ground, or otherwise, and drawn in until the sag is only 1-10 or 1-12 of the span.

**282.—**In Fig. 5, part of the roadway is hung below and a part rests on the cables, the greatest slope of road being 1 on 6 for 100 ft. span and 1-10 sag. The cables are only 7 ft. apart.

**283.—**In Fig. 6, the roadway is built on trestles supported on the cables. For spans 130 ft. sag 1-12, the frames form the sides of equilateral triangles of 10 ft. each. To construct it, the curve of the cables is traced on the ground, the trestle legs laid on it and marked where they cross the road and cable; those for each half of the bridge are ranged in order on the banks, connected together as placed on the cables and hauled out, connected at the center, the curve of the cables adjusted and the bridge completed.

**284.—**Fig. 7 is a suspension bridge of which the cables are made of boards nailed together in several thicknesses laid horizontally, breaking joints; the ends are spread apart and wedge-shaped blocks inserted and anchored by several rows of posts, as

shown in Fig. 8. Each cable, as made, is drawn across by ropes, anchored, and the trestles placed from both ends at the same time. Last of all, spikes long enough to reach entirely through the cable are driven every 4 to 6 in.

285.—Fig. 11 is a similar bridge supported on trestles 16 ft. long, not exceeding 20 ft. high, placed at intervals of 40 ft., over which suspends the two board cables, 14 ft. apart. On these are placed low trestles, 3 ft. high, dividing the spans into lengths of 20 ft. each; 25 ft. barks are used and the roadway laid as usual. The cables are made of six thicknesses, of 1 in. boards 12 in. wide, breaking joints, nailed and spiked every 4 to 6 in., and bolted by pairs of  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. bolts every foot. Three thicknesses of boards are first nailed together and drawn across, the ends anchored, and then the other three boards added.

286.—For light foot bridges (Fig. 10), across narrow gaps, wire from fences, if available, could be used for the cables by twisting a number together and passing them over crotches of trees and anchoring to stumps, etc., in rear, and then laying the walk similar to some of the methods previously shown.

287.—So various are the conditions to be met in constructing bridges that seldom will any one type meet the requirements, but by the application of good judgment and resource, with the suggestions here offered, almost any gap of reasonable width may be crossed, if not by one type or another, then by a combination of several to meet the emergency.

The varying strength of timbers makes it almost impossible to give exact dimensions for the different spars to be used in the different types, but a general idea may be obtained below of the amounts and average dimensions of medium strength timber, as yellow pine. For weaker timbers some of the sizes will have to be increased, while for stronger ones there will be an excess of strength if the sizes given are adhered to, but the desire to be on

# PLATE 40a.

Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.

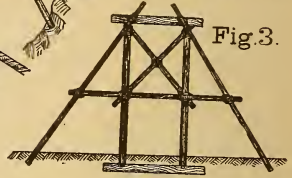


Fig. 8.

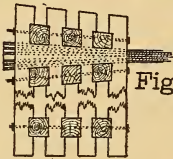


Fig. 4.



Fig. 5.

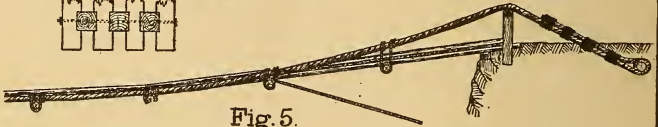


Fig. 6.

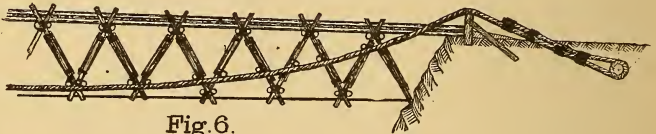


Fig. 7.

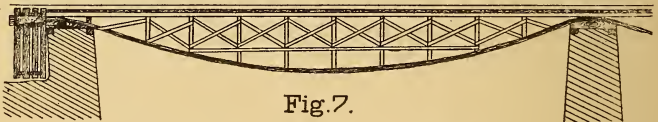


Fig. 11.

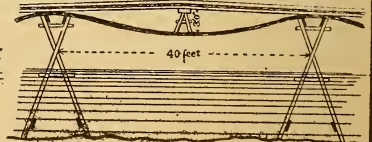


Fig. 10.



the side of safety warrants the use of amounts which might, by a careful mathematical calculation, appear to be excessive.

The timbers for transoms, ledgers, braces, balks, flooring and side rails should be selected of as nearly a uniform diameter throughout as possible and will be so considered in giving dimensions. For legs or standards the diameter at tip will be given.

For a 9 ft. roadway with 15 ft. spans, 5 balks 20 ft. long x about 6 in. in diam. are used, and placed  $2\frac{1}{4}$  ft. apart from center to center. For the flooring are used poles 11 to 12 ft. long x 4 to 5 in. in diam. For side rails 2 poles 20 ft. long, 4 to 6 in. in diam.

For each **Six-legged Trestle** (Pl. 36, Fig. 1) 4 vertical and 2 bracing legs 6 in. diam.; 1 transom 12 ft. x 8 in.; 2 foot pieces 3 ft. x 8 in.; 10 oak pins 2 in. diam.

For each **Tie-block Trestle** (Fig. 2) 2 legs 8 in. diam.; 2 transoms 15 ft. x 8 in.; 4 tie blocks 2 ft. x 5 in. x 6 in.; 2 braces 3 ft. x 2 in. x 6 in.; 24 spikes, 1 rope, 1 rackstick.

For each **Capped Trestle** (Fig. 3) 4 legs 8 in. diam.; 2 braces 12 ft. x 4 in.; 2 braces 15 ft. x 5 in.; 3 boards 12 ft. x 2 in. x 12 in.; 4 ropes, spikes.

For each **Two-legged Trestle**, lashed (Fig. 4), 2 legs 4 ft. longer than height of trestle, 5 to 7 in. tip; 1 transom 15 ft. x 9 in.; 1 ledger 16 ft. x 4 to 6 in.; 2 braces 3 to 5 in. diam.; 6 ropes 30 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. diam.; 3 ropes 15 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. diam.

For each **Three-legged Trestle**, lashed (Pl. 37, Fig. 1), 6 legs 3 to 5 in. tip; 4 transom bearers 6 ft. x 3 to 4 in.; 4 sticks 2 ft. x 2 to 3 in.; 6 ledgers 2 to 3 in. diam.; 1 transom 15 ft. x 9 in.; 12 ropes 30 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. diam.; 6 ropes 15 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. diam.

For each **Four-legged Trestle**, lashed (Fig. 2), twice the amount given for each two-legged trestle, plus 2 ledgers, and 6 lashings 15 ft. long.

For each **Single Lock** (Pl. 38, Fig. 4) 4 legs 22 to 25 ft. x 7 in. tip; 1 fork transom 15 ft. x 10 in.; 2 frame transoms 15 ft. x 6



in.; 2 ledgers 15 ft. x 4 to 6 in.; 4 braces 20 ft. x 3 in.; 2 shore sills 15 ft. x 6 in. *Lashings*, 4 transom 50 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.; 14 ledger and brace 30 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.; 10 barks 20 ft. x 1-3 in.; 4 foot 50 ft. x 1 in.; 8 guy 150 ft. x 1 in.

For each Double Lock (Pl. 30, Fig. 1) 4 legs 22 to 25 ft. x 7 in. tip; 2 straining beams 25 ft. x 8 in.; 2 road transoms 15 ft. x 10 in.; 2 frame transoms 15 ft. x 6 in.; 2 ledgers 15 ft. x 5 to 6 in.; 4 braces 20 ft. x 3 in.; 2 shore sills 15 ft. x 6 in. *Lashings*, 8 transom 50 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.; 14 ledger and brace 30 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.; 10 bark 20 ft. x 1-3 in.; 4 foot 50 ft. x 1 in.; 8 guy 150 ft. x 1 in.; besides axes and other tools, and anchorages, holdfasts, etc., on banks.

For each Single Sling (Fig. 2) 4 legs 35 to 45 ft. x 6 in. tip; 3 top and fork transoms 15 ft. x 6 in.; 3 road transoms 15 ft. x 10 in.; 2 ledgers 15 ft. x 4 to 6 in.; 4 braces 20 ft. x 3 in.; 2 shore sills 15 ft. x 6 in.; 10 barks 30 ft. x 6 in.; 4 side rails 30 ft. x 4 to 6 in. *Lashings* of same number, size and length as for Double Lock. Stiffening will require additional spars and lashings, depending upon the method used.

For each Treble Sling (Fig. 3) 4 legs 50 ft. x 6 in. tip; 5 road transoms 15 ft. x 10 in.; 3 top and fork transoms 15 ft. x 6 in.; 2 lower ledgers 15 ft. x 4 to 6 in.; 4 lower braces 20 ft. x 3 in.; 4 upper braces 18 ft. x 3 in.; 2 shore sills 15 ft. x 6 in.; 15 barks 5 ft. longer than 1-3 span x 6 in.; 6 side rails 5 ft. longer than 1-3 span x 4 to 6 in.; 6 sling racking sticks 10 ft. x 4 in. *Lashings*, 4 foot 50 ft. x 1 in.; 8 guy 150 ft. x 1 in.; 24 ledger and brace 30 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.; 8 transom 50 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.; 40 or 50 bark 20 ft. x 1-3 in. Stiffening will require additional spars and lashings, depending upon the method used.

For Suspension Bridge 200 ft. long (Pl. 40a, Fig. 1) 4 to 8 cables 180 ft. x 1 in.; 16 cable seizings of yarn 18 ft. long; 12 lashings 50 ft. x 2-3 in.; 10 lashings 30 ft. x  $\frac{1}{2}$  in.; 100 lashings 20 ft. x 1-3 in.; 2 steel wire cables 400 ft. x 1 2-3 in.; 4 standards 26 ft. x



10 in. tip; 4 braces 22 ft. x 3½ in. tip; 2 caps 12 ft. x 10 in.; 2 sills 15 ft. x 10 in.; 4 back struts 36 ft. x 4 in. tip; 4 side struts 32 ft. x 3 in. tip; 4 cable props 30 ft. x 5 in. tip; 4 horizontal ties 30 ft. x 3 in. tip; 21 transoms 10 ft. x 6 in.; 80 balks 13 ft. x 6 in.; 40 side rails 20 ft. x 6 in.; for anchorages 16 spars 5 ft. x 7 in. tip; 2 spars 16 ft. x 20 in.; 2 spars 16 ft. x 12 in. ¾ round; 10 spars 16 ft. x 8 in. ¾ round; 4 back ties 50 ft. x 2-3 in. steel rope; 4 ties 35 ft. x ½ in. steel rope; 40 slings total 600 ft. x ½ in. steel rope; 4 guys 50 ft. x 1 in.; 4 rope ladders.

**For Suspension Bridge 100 ft. long (Fig. 5)** 4 to 8 cables, 12 cable seizings, 4 lashings, 12 lashings, 30 lashings as above; 2 cables 180 ft. x 3 in. hemp or 2 in. steel; 2 anchor spars 18 ft. x 15 in.; 10 transoms 12 ft. x 4 in.; 4 balks 25 ft. x 6 in.; 10 side rails 20 ft. x 4 in.; materials for piers depending on circumstances.

**For Suspension Bridge 130 ft. long (Fig. 6)** 4 to 8 cables, 12 cable seizings, 9 lashings, 104 lashings, 280 lashings as above; 4 cables 200 ft. x 2 2-3 in. hemp or 1½ in. steel; 2 anchor spars 18 ft. x 18 in.; 44 trestle legs 13 ft. x 3 in. tip; 44 braces 15 ft. x 2 in. tip; 22 transoms 9 ft. x 4 in.; 80 ledgers 12 ft. x 2 in.; 20 cable ledgers 12 ft. x 5 in.; 2 shore sills 10 ft. x 5 in.; 48 balks 14 ft. x 5 in.; 28 side rails 20 ft. x 5 in.; materials for piers depending on circumstances.

Besides the above materials, there will be required tools for cutting timber, tackles for raising frames, shovels, pickets, etc., and, where not mentioned, the ordinary amounts of balks, chess, side rails, etc.

## CHAPTER XVI.—Floating Bridges.

288.—The passage of a stream may be effected, in many cases, as described in the preceding chapter. If the methods there laid down are not suitable or expedient, and the stream cannot be forded, then resort must be had to ferrying by boats, rafts, flying bridges, or to floating bridges.

289.—The selection of a place and means of crossing a river is determined by a reconnaissance, which should be as detailed and extensive as circumstances will permit, and embrace the following:—

- (a) The nature of the banks.
- (b) The nature of the bed.
- (c) Position and depth of fords.
- (d) Strength of the current.
- (e) Whether tidal or otherwise.
- (f) Probability and extent of floods.

290.—Fords. A stream with a moderate current may be forded by infantry when its depth does not exceed 3 ft., and by cavalry and carriages when its depth is about 4 ft. The requisites of a good ford are:—

- (a) Banks low, but not marshy.
- (b) Water attaining its depth gradually.
- (c) Current moderate.
- (d) Stream not subject to freshets.
- (e) Bottom even, hard, and tenacious.

291.—In a mountainous country, the bed of a stream is likely to be covered with large stones, rendering the passage of carriages impracticable. In level countries, the bed of the stream may be composed of mud or quicksand, rendering passage by fording impossible. In some cases, the bottom is composed of fine sand, which is hard enough, but which, by the action of the hoofs of the animals, is stirred up; the current then carries the

sand away and the ford is deepened, perhaps so much as to become unfordable. The best bottom is coarse gravel.

292.—Fords are usually found in the wider and more rapid parts of a stream. A straight reach gives the most uniform depth. At bends, the depth will generally be greater at the concave bank and less at the convex. (Pl. 41, Figs. 1 and 3.)

293.—To determine the position of a ford:—

(1) A number of mounted men may be sent across wherever there is a probability of the river being shallow enough.

(2) *Most certain method.* Float down the stream in a boat, keeping in the swiftest part of the current, where the water is usually deepest. Hang a sounding line of the proper length over the stern. When this touches bottom, sound across the stream.

When a ford is discovered, it should be marked by stakes; remarkable objects on the shore should be noted; and a stake planted at the water's edge and marked, in order that any rise in the water may be at once evident.

294.—A stream, otherwise unfordable, may be passed:—

(1) By crossing it in a slanting direction. (Fig. 2.)

(2) When the unfordable portion is not over 8 or 10 yards, this may be filled in with fascines loaded with stones. (Fig. 4.)

(3) When the bottom is muddy, it may be covered with bundles of coarse grass, rushes, or twigs, sunk by means of stones.

(4) A portion of the water may be diverted from its natural channel. (Fig. 5.)

295.—In passing a stream by fording, if it is deep and the current at all swift, the following precautions should be taken:—

(a) Troops passing in column should do so at a considerable interval, in order to avoid choking the stream.

(b) If boats are to be had, a few should be stationed below the ford, to assist men who may be carried down by the current.

# PLATE 41.

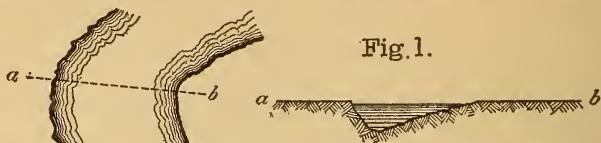


Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.



Fig. 4



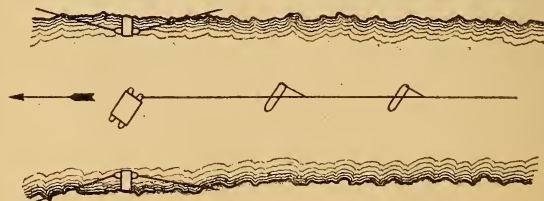
Fig. 6.



Fig. 5.



Fig. 7.



(c) If boats cannot be procured, mounted men may perform the duties described in the foregoing provision.

(d) In place of provisions "b" and "c," a life line, held up by casks, may be stretched across the stream.

(e) In order to break the force of the current, cavalry may be stationed in the stream, above the point of crossing.

296.—After a freshet, a ford should always be reëxamined, lest some alteration may have taken place in the bed of the stream. The banks of a stream to be forded should, if necessary, be cut down.

The velocity of a stream may be determined by throwing in a light rod, so weighted as to stand vertically. Note the distance passed over in a certain number of seconds; then, 7-10 the mean number of feet per second gives the velocity in miles per hour.

297.—**Ice.** In high latitudes, during the winter, rivers are frequently covered with ice of sufficient thickness to sustain the heaviest loads. This means of passing a stream should be used with great circumspection. A change of temperature may not only suddenly destroy the natural bridge, but render the river impassable by any method, for a considerable time, in consequence of floating ice.

298.—Ice, in order to allow of passage, should be of the following thickness:—

For Infantry, single file, 2 yds. distance, on a line of	
planks .....	2 in.
For Cavalry or light guns, with intervals.....	4 in.
Heavy field-pieces.....	5 to 7 in.
Heaviest loads....	10 in.

299.—When there is any doubt as to the strength of the ice, two tracks of plank may be laid for the carriage wheels to run on, or the wagon may be transformed into a kind of sled by fastening two planks under the wheels. (Fig. 6.)

The thickness of ice may be increased, when the temperature is low, by throwing water on it. When a stream is frozen on each side sufficiently to allow the water to freeze.

current, a boom stretched across the open space will often check side but open in the middle, in consequence of the velocity of the

300.—If a stream cannot be forded, it may be crossed by ferrying or by constructing a bridge. Ferrying may be by boat, raft, or flying bridge; rowed, sheered, or hauled across.

301.—*Ferrying by Boat.* All boats available should be collected and taken to the chosen point of passage. The banks of the stream, if steep, should be cut down to facilitate embarkation. The landing should be farther down the stream than the point of starting. The boats should be arranged along the shore and numbered. Entrance to the boats should be by file, the soldiers taking positions on opposite sides alternately. Where the water is shallow near the shore, the boat should not approach the bank so closely as to ground as the men file in. The unloading should be made in the same manner as the embarkation—*i. e.*, by file alternately from each side of the boat. During the transit. the men should remain in position and not rise up suddenly when the boat lurches.

In passing artillery, the piece should be dismounted. Horses should, ordinarily, be made to swim. However, if the boats are large enough, the bottoms may be covered with plank, and the horses placed crosswise, facing alternately up and down stream.

302.—*Ferrying by Raft.* Rafts may be made of logs, lumber, casks, and other material suitable for the purpose. Their construction is the same as explained for piers of bridges, hence only two expedients will be mentioned here.

303.—*The Canvas Raft.* No other material being available, small rafts can be constructed by the use of canvas about 8 x 12 ft., and brushwood. Wet the canvas to make it water-proof,



and lay it out on the ground. Across the width place sticks in layers, the longest near the middle. The sides should be strengthened by heavy sticks placed lengthwise. The pile of sticks should be about 4 ft. wide in the center and sloping off slightly towards the ends, 3 ft. high and 8 ft. long. Over this pile a second piece of canvas, after being wet, should be placed. The sides of the canvas on the ground are now drawn over toward each other and lashed securely with a lariat. The ends are folded neatly, brought up towards each other, and lashed. If care is taken to wet the canvas thoroughly and make it water-tight, this raft will carry three troopers with their arms and accouterments. By lashing several together, a larger number of men, with their arms and accouterments, can be carried.

**304.—Rafts of Skins.** Bags, made of the skins of animals, inflated with air or stuffed with hay or straw, can be utilized for crossing streams, and have been used from ancient times.

**305.—Rafts** are more suitable for the embarkation and landing of troops of all arms than boats. They will carry a larger number each trip, are not so easily injured by the fire of the enemy, and draw little water. On the other hand, they cannot be navigated with the same facility as boats, move much more slowly, and hence keep the troops much longer under fire; cannot be directed with certainty on a fixed point when the stream is rapid, and, if the passage is to be effected secretly, the time required for their construction is too long to admit of their use.

**306.—The Floating Bridge.\*** This may be formed of two

---

\* A simple modification of the floating bridge is an expedient used in the Philippine Islands for floating wagons across deep streams.

This is merely to run the vehicle into the stream astride of two bancas (narrow dugouts), the axles resting on the gunwales and the boats as far apart as the hubs of the wheels will allow. Wagons can thus be readily crossed without unloading, provided the bancas are large enough to support the weight.

boats covered with a platform, constructed as follows:—(Pl. 42, Fig. 1.—The lashings and side rails are omitted.) From 5 to 7 beams of the same thickness are laid across the two boats, the intervals between the beams being equal, and such that the covering planks extend 1 ft. beyond the extreme beams. The interval between the boats is such as to allow the beams to extend 2 ft. beyond the gunwales. The beams are lashed to the boats, the covering planks are kept in place by 2 side rails, laid directly over the outer beams, and lashed down to them; the extreme planks should be nailed down.

The floating bridge can be navigated by oars with nearly the same facility as a boat.

**307.—The Rope Ferry.** The rope ferry, which is used in sluggish streams, consists of a floating support, either a raft, floating bridge, or a large boat. It is drawn by hand along a rope stretched from shore to shore.

**308.—The Trail Bridge.** This is employed in streams not more than 150 yds. in width, and whose current is not less than 3 ft. per second, or 2 1-10 miles per hour. The rope must be maintained above the surface of the water, and, consequently, must be drawn very tightly by means of a windlass, blocks, and falls, or similar expedients; it must, also, at each bank, be raised some distance above the water. (Pl. 45, Fig. 5.)

The raft, or boat, is attached to a pulley, which runs on a sheer line, and by means of a rudder is given such a position that its side makes an angle of about  $55^{\circ}$  with the direction of the current. The angle of  $55^{\circ}$  with the current divides its force against the side of the boat into two components: one, perpendicular to the sheer line, which is counteracted by the resistance of this line; the other, parallel to it, which moves the boat. A boat for this kind of ferry should be narrow and deep, with nearly vertical sides.

Fig. 1.

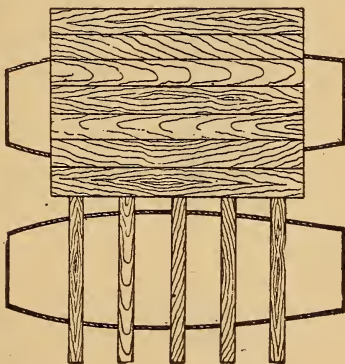


Fig. 2.

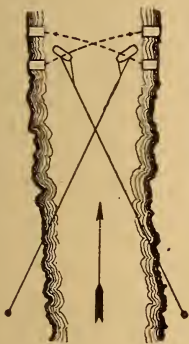


Fig. 4.



Fig. 3.

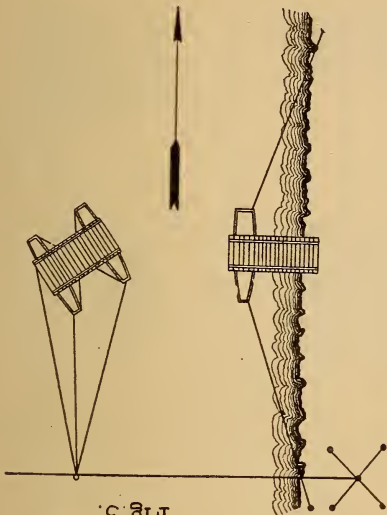


Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.

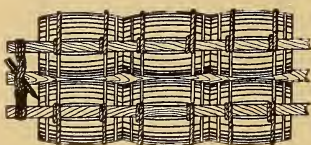


Fig. 4.



Fig. 5.

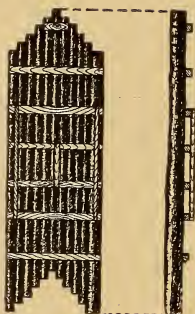


Fig. 6.

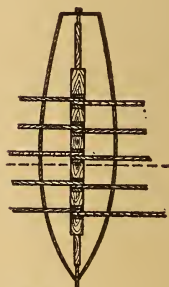


Fig. 8.

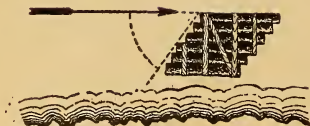


Fig. 7.



If a raft is used, it should be lozenge-shaped, the acute angle being about  $55^{\circ}$ . When two sides are parallel to the current, the up-stream side will then be in the most favorable position for passage. (Pl. 43, Fig. 8.)

308a.—A convenient expedient for tightening a ferry rope when no blocks are at hand is shown in Plate 45, Fig. 5. A second rope "r" is attached to the ferry rope "R" at a convenient point "a" by a hitch and then passed around the holdfast and through a loop "b" on the ferry rope; power is then applied as indicated by the arrow, the slack of the ferry rope being taken in at "c." When the ferry rope is tight enough, the attached rope "r" is eased off, thus letting the strain come gradually upon the ferry rope again.

309.—*The Flying Bridge.* The character of the float for this ferry is the same as in the preceding case. (Pl. 41, Fig. 7; Pl. 42, Fig. 2.) This bridge is resorted to when the stream is wider than 150 yds. The strain on the sheer line being very great, it is replaced by a cable anchored in mid-stream, in which case the float would swing between two landing piers; or by two cables, one anchored on either bank, the float swinging between four piers. The latter requires less skill in manipulation. The angle which the float makes with the current is the same as that of the "trail" bridge. A sharp bend may be utilized for anchoring the cable, as shown in Pl. 42, Fig. 4.

The length of a swinging cable should be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 times the width of the stream. The cable should be supported on intermediate buoys or floats, to prevent it dragging in the water.

310.—*Floating Bridges* are composed of a roadway and its supports. The roadway is explained in the preceding chapter. The supports are floating, as pontoons, boats of commerce, rafts of barrels, logs, lumber, inflated skins of animals, or other mate-

rial. The supports are called *floating piers*. It is from the character of the support that the bridge derives its name.

311.—In constructing a floating bridge, the *site* should be first selected and the *width* of the stream measured.

In selecting a *site*, the following points should be noted:—

(a) Proximity to a road. As the approaches to floating bridges, having frequently to be constructed across meadows, give much trouble, they should be as short as possible. For a similar reason, marshy banks are undesirable.

(b) The bed of the stream, if anchors are required, should afford good holding ground.

(c) A bridge can be best defended if constructed at a reëntering bend of a river.

(d) Use can frequently be made of islands to economize material.

312.—In measuring the *width* of the stream, if it cannot be done directly, some one of the methods explained in Chap. III. can be used.

313.—It should be remembered that a wide roadway gives greater steadiness than a narrow one. In making calculations for buoyancy, the weight of a 9 ft. roadway may be taken at 80 lbs. per running foot.

314.—**Piers.** Of whatever material the floating pier is made, the following points should be observed:—

(1) The available buoyancy of each pier should be sufficient to support the heaviest load that can be brought on one bay of the bridge.

(2) Piers should be connected with each other, at their extremities, by tie balks or lashings.

(3) To insure steadiness, the length of a pier should be at least twice the width of the roadway.

(4) The water way between piers should, if possible, be more than the width of two piers, never less.



315.—Piers of open boats. In forming a pier of open boats, the following precautions should be taken:—

(1) The boat should not be immersed deeper than within 1 ft. of the gunwale.

(2) If the water is rough, or the current extremely swift, a boat should not be immersed deeper than within 1 ft. 4 in. of the gunwale.

(3) Boats should be placed *in bridge* with bows up stream or toward the current.

(4) If the stream is *tidal*, the bows of the boats should be alternately up and down stream.

(5) Unless the boat is very heavy and strong, the barks should not rest on the gunwales; a central transom should be improvised by resting a timber on the thwarts, or seats, blocking up from underneath and bringing the weight directly on the keelson. (Pl. 43, Figs. 6 and 7.)

(6) Large boats should be placed where the current is swiftest, also as the first and last boats in bridge.

316.—The buoyancy of a boat may be found by one of the following rules:—

(1) To find the *available* buoyancy load the boat with unarmed men to a safe depth. Multiply the number of men thus loaded by 160. The result will be the *available* buoyancy in *pounds*.

(2) If the boat is afloat and empty, the *available* buoyancy may be found by calculating the volume between the then water line and the "safe load" line, and multiplying by  $62\frac{1}{2}$ .

(3) To find the *total* buoyancy. If the boat is of nearly uniform section, the area of the section multiplied by the length of the boat will give the cubic contents. A cubic foot of water weighs  $62\frac{1}{2}$  pounds.

Hence, if the dimensions of a boat are taken in feet, the contents will be cubic feet, and this, multiplied by  $62\frac{1}{2}$ , will give the

*displacement* of the boat; from this subtract the weight of the boat; this will give the *total buoyancy*.

317.—To find the length of a bay. First find the available buoyancy of the boat. Then find the weight per running foot of the load the bridge is to bear, and to this add the weight per running foot of the roadway. Divide the available buoyancy by this sum. The quotient will be the distance in feet from center to center that boats should be placed apart. Thus:—Suppose the weight per running foot is 480 lbs., that the roadway is 80 lbs. per running foot.  $\therefore 480+80=560$ . The available buoyancy is found by one of the preceding rules to be 5,600 lbs.  $\therefore 5,600 \div 560=10$ , the distance in feet between centers of boats.

318.—The open boats may be:—(1) Those of commerce usually found on streams. (2) Regularly constructed pontoons. (3) Improvised boats.

The first class requires no description. The second class comprises the canvas ponton used in the Advance Guard Train, and the boat or barge used in the Reserve Train, of the U. S.

319.—The table below gives the dimensions of the ponton in the U. S. Advance Guard Train, shown in Pl. 47.

Canvas Ponton 21' x 5' 4" x 2' 4". Weight, 510 lbs.

Balks 22' x 4½" x 4½".

Side Rails same as Balks.

Chess 11' x 12" x 1½".

WEIGHTS FOR ADVANCE GUARD TRAIN.

	Wagon.	Load.	Total.
	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.
Ponton .....	1,750	1,985	3,735
Chess .....	1,750	1,856	3,606
Trestle .....	1,750	2,060	3,810
Tool. ....	1,700	1,938	3,638
Forge. ....	1,217	1,166	2,383

320.—The table below gives the dimensions of the ponton in the U. S. Reserve Train, shown in Pl. 48.

Ponton 31' x 5' 8" x 2' 7". Weight, 1,600 lbs.

Balks 27' x 5" x 5" for a 20' span.

Trestle Balks 21' 8" x 5" x 5".

Chess 13' x 12" x 1½".

Side Rails same as Balks.

WEIGHTS FOR RESERVE TRAIN.

	Wagon.	Load.	Total.
	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.
Ponton .....	2,200	2,900	5,100
Chess .....	1,750	2,280	4,030
Trestle .....	2,200	2,635	4,835
Tool. ....	1,700	2,100	3,800
Forge . ....	2,217	1,166	3,383

321.—**Improvised Boats.** To reduce the amount of transportation required by an army is a very important consideration; hence the value of the following expedients.

322.—**The Crib Ponton.** This boat is 18 ft. long, 5 ft. wide, 2½ ft. deep and covered with canvas. Construction. (1) Let stakes 4 ft. long, 2½ in. in diameter, and 2 ft. apart, be driven into the ground (Pl. 44, Figs. 1, 2 and 3), to the depth of about 1 ft., so as to enclose a space of the proper size for the top of the boat. The tops of the stakes should be in the same horizontal plane. This may be tested by placing a straight-edge on them. Those that are too high can then be driven down.

(2) Nail boards against the outside of the stakes, extending 4 in. over their tops.

(3) Cross-pieces, of the same diameter as the stakes, are laid across the tops and pinned down upon them with wooden pins.

(4) Nail the side boards to the ends of the cross-pieces, and

Fig. 1.



Fig. 6.



Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.



Fig. 7.

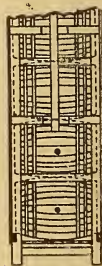


Fig. 4.

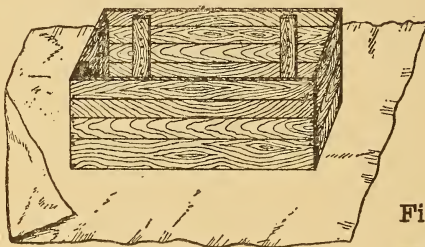


Fig. 8.



Fig. 5.



cover the bottom of the boat, which in its inverted position is now on top, with boards, and nail the projecting edges of the side boards to the bottom securely.

(5) Finish boarding sides and ends to the proper depth.

(6) The frame is now ready to be covered with canvas. For a boat of the foregoing dimensions, the canvas should be  $23\frac{1}{2}$  ft. x  $10\frac{1}{2}$  ft., about 6 in. being allowed for lap. The canvas may be put together in any number of pieces by daubing the edges of the seams with a water-proof composition and connecting them with ordinary carpet tacks.

(7) The canvas having been prepared, it should now be coated with a water-proof composition. Tallow, put on hot, will do if nothing better can be found.

(8) Place the canvas on the frame, coated side downward. Tack the canvas to the frame and cover with water-proof composition.

(9) Spike or pin 2 or 3 stout poles to the bottom longitudinally (not shown in drawing) to keep the bottom from abrading. If these poles are allowed to project about 6 in. at each end, they will assist in launching.

(10) Loosen the stakes from the ground by means of levers. Turn the boat over and saw off the stakes about 2 in. below the top edge of the side and end boards.

(11) Pin stout poles to the top of the stakes on the sides and ends, and nail the side and end boards securely to them.

(12) The side poles should project about 6 in. beyond the ends corresponding to those on the bottom, and be lashed to the bottom poles by means of a rope loop and rack stick. (Not shown in drawing.)

(13) Turn the canvas over the top poles and tack it down. The boat is finished.

**323.—The Box Ponton.** In localities where planks and boards can be conveniently procured, pontons may be constructed very

expeditiously by placing two partitions of 2 in plank, each 5 ft. long and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ft. high, in parallel positions, on the top and ends of which boards are nailed. (Pl. 44, Fig. 4.) The box thus formed to be covered with pitched canvas, as described in the mode of constructing crib pontons. Where sound lumber is at hand, the box ponton will be more easily and expeditiously constructed than the crib ponton, but if plank is not at hand it may be preferable to use poles or split timber rather than wait for it.

**324.—Wagon Body Ponton.** Ordinary wagon bodies, covered with water-proof canvas or India rubber blankets, may be used either as boats or pontons. The small capacity of the wagon body requires such pontons to be placed more closely, to compensate for it.

**325.—Piers of Barrels.** In order to determine the number of barrels necessary to form a pier, the buoyancy of a barrel must be calculated. This may be done by one of the following rules:—

(1) Find the contents of the barrel in gallons and multiply this by 8 1-3; the result will be almost the *total* buoyancy in pounds.

(2) By the formula

$$5c^2 l - W = x$$

in which *c* is the circumference of the barrel in feet half way between the bung and the extreme end; *l* is the length in feet, exclusive of projections, measured along a stave, and *W* is the weight of the barrel in pounds; *x* being the *total* buoyancy. If the barrel is closed, 9-10 of the *total* buoyancy equals the *available* buoyancy.

**326.—To find the distance between two piers of barrels:** Find the available buoyancy of each barrel. Multiply this by the number of barrels in the pier. This gives the available buoyancy of the pier. To the weight per running foot that the bridge is to bear add the weight per running foot of the superstructure. Divide



the available buoyancy of the pier by this sum; the quotient will be the required distance in feet between centers of piers.

**327.**—In regard to *piers of barrels*, the following should be noted:

(1) That piers of barrels, when in bridge, should always be rigidly connected to each other at their ends by tie balks.

(2) That the tie balks should be lashed to both gunnels of each pier.

(3) That while the roadway balks may not be lashed to the gunnels and to each other, it should be done if there is much sway to the bridge.

**328.**—*Piers of Open Barrels.* This is the simplest and most convenient method of using barrels for piers, as it requires only a few nails and poles, dispensing with ropes, which are sometimes hard to procure.

To make a raft of this kind, as shown in Pl. 44, Figs. 5 and 6, stand 10 or 12 barrels side by side, touching each other; nail 4 poles across the outside of the barrels, two at top, two at bottom, the nails being driven from the inside into the poles, which, as the heads are out, can easily be done. Place another row of barrels beside the row thus fastened together and nail them to the two poles of this row. Nail two poles to the outside of the second row of barrels, one at top and one at bottom; push the barrels thus connected into the water.

If too many rows are connected on land they will become too heavy to handle. Any number of rows, however, can be attached in the manner described above. When the raft is completed, the projecting ends of the poles outside are lashed together, and, at the points of contact of the barrels, a stout wire nail should be driven through and clinched.

**329.**—The total buoyancy of a barrel may be calculated by the

formula given above. If this should be 400 lbs., the safe load for smooth water would be at least 300 lbs.; that is, the available buoyancy is about  $\frac{3}{4}$  the total buoyancy. A square raft of 10 such barrels to a side would carry safely 30,000 lbs.

**330.—Piers of Closed Barrels.** The usual method of forming large barrels into a pier is shown in Pl. 43, Figs. 1 and 2. The following are the successive steps in its construction:—

Stores required for a pier of 7 barrels: 7 barrels; 2 gunnels; 2 slings; 12 braces.

To build a pier of the foregoing stores, 1 N. C. O. and 16 men will be required. The detachment is marched to the site on which the material is placed and forms the barrels into piers by the following commands and means, 4 men being detailed as gunnelmen and 12 as bracemen.

(1) **Align barrels.** At this command, the barrels are brought to the designated place by the bracemen and aligned, touching each other, bung uppermost.

(2) **Place gunnels.** At this command, the gunnels are placed on the outer ends of the barrels by the gunnelmen.

(3) **Adjust slings.** At this command, gunnelmen bring up the slings and stand at the ends of the gunnels, the bracemen being opposite the intervals between the barrels. The gunnelmen at one end place the eyes of the slings over the ends of the gunnels, and those at the other end secure the slings to the ends of the gunnels by a round turn and two half-hitches. The bracemen keep the slings under the ends of the barrels with their feet. A sling is made of 1 in. rope and of sufficient length for an eye splice 1 ft. long, at one end.

(4) **Fasten braces.** At this command, the bracemen, having provided themselves with braces, pass the eye of the brace under the sling in the center of their interval the end passed through the eye and the brace hauled taut, the sling being steadied by

either foot. The brace is then brought up outside the gunnel, directly over the eye, and a turn round the gunnel taken to the left of the standing part.

(5) **Haul taut.** At this command, each braceman removes his foot from the sling and hauls up the standing part of his brace with his right hand, holding on to the turn with his left; as soon as the brace is taut, the turn is held with the left hand and the remainder of the brace in a coil is placed on the barrel to the left.

(6) **Cross braces.** At this command, each braceman takes the brace of the man opposite him from the barrel on his right, passing it between the standing part of his brace and the barrel on his left, then back between his brace and the barrel on his right, keeping the turn below the figure of eight knot on his own brace. The end is then placed on the barrel on his right. Each man then takes back his own brace from the barrel on his left, passes it under the gunnel to the left of the standing part, places one foot against the gunnel and hauls taut.

(7) **Rock and haul taut.** The bracemen, assisted by the gunnelmen, at this command, rock the pier backwards and forwards, the bracemen taking in the slack of their braces.

(8) **Steady.** At this command, the bracemen cease rocking and take a turn round the gunnel to the left of the previous turns.

(9) **Secure braces.** At this command, the braces are made fast by two half-hitches round the two parts of their own braces, close to the gunnels, drawing the two parts close together and placing the spare ends of the braces between the barrels.

(10) **Turn the pier to the right and adjust sling.** At this command, the bracemen on the left side, assisted by the gunnelmen, turn the pier on its right side. The bracemen on the left side adjust the left sling.

(11) Lower the pier, turn to the left, and adjust sling. At this command, the bracemen on the left, assisted by the gunnelmen, lower the pier. The bracemen on the right, assisted by the gunnelmen, then turn the pier to the left. The bracemen on the right then adjust the right sling. The pier is complete.

331.—Should the barrels be very small, they may be put together as above described, forming small piers. These can then be united in one large pier by cross gunnels.

332.—Another method of forming barrels into a pier is as follows:—(Figs. 3 and 4.)

Fasten the braces to a balk, two braces for each barrel. Stretch out the braces perpendicular to the balk and lay the barrels bung uppermost, end to end, on each side of the balk, each barrel over its own braces. Upon the cask lay two gunnels, fastened together at the ends and one or two intermediate points by lashings, the distance between the gunnels being less than a bung diameter of a barrel. Secure the braces to the gunnels by two round turns and two half-hitches. The lashings connecting the gunnels are then racked up. The two end gunnel lashings are lashed to the balk beneath the barrels and these lashings are racked up taut. The pier is then complete.

333.—The barrels may be held in a *frame*, as shown in Pl. 44. Figs. 7 and 8.

334.—**Piers of Logs.** In order to determine the number of logs necessary to form a pier, the buoyancy of a log must be calculated.

To find the *total* buoyancy of a log. Multiply the solid contents of a log by the difference between the weight of a cubic foot of the log and a cubic foot of water.

335.—To find the solid contents of a log.

(1) Take a mean of the girths or circumference at the ends in feet and decimals. Square this mean and multiply it by the decimal .07956. Multiply this product by the length of the log in feet.

(2) Multiply *twice* the square of 1-5 of the mean girth by the length of the trunk.

336.—The weight per cubic foot of the timbers usually met with will be found in Chap. XV.

337.—Required the total buoyancy of a pine log whose mean girth is 6 ft. and whose length is 35 ft.

Applying rule 2, we have

$$2 \times \frac{6}{5} \times \frac{6}{5} \times 35 = 100\frac{1}{5} \text{ cu. ft.}$$

$$100\frac{1}{5} \times (62\frac{1}{2} - 40) = 100\frac{1}{5} \times 22\frac{1}{2} = 100.8 \times 22.5 = 2,268 \text{ lbs.}$$

As lumber absorbs water, the *available* buoyancy is taken as 5-6 the *total* buoyancy.

338.—To form a pier of logs. (Pl. 43, Fig. 5.) The largest and longest logs should be selected. Branches and knots should be trimmed off. The ends of the logs should be painted if the raft is to be used any length of time. The raft should be built in the water. Select a place where there is little current and where the bank slopes gently to the stream. Throw the timber into the water and moor it close to the shore. Note the natural position of each log in the water before putting it in the raft. The up-stream end of each log should be drawn on shore and beveled to a whistle shape, so as to present less obstruction to the action of the current.

Arrange the timber in the position it is to have in the raft, the butts alternately up and down stream, the up-stream ends forming a right angle, salient up stream. The first log is brought alongside the shore and the end of a plank or a small trunk of a tree fastened with trenails or spikes to it about 3 ft. from each end. The log is then pushed off a little, a second log brought up under

FIG.1.

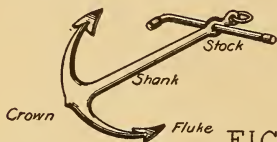


FIG.2.



FIG.3.

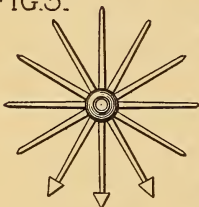


FIG.4.

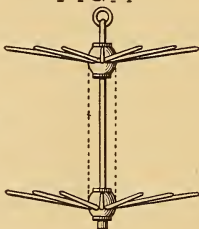


FIG.5.



FIG.6.

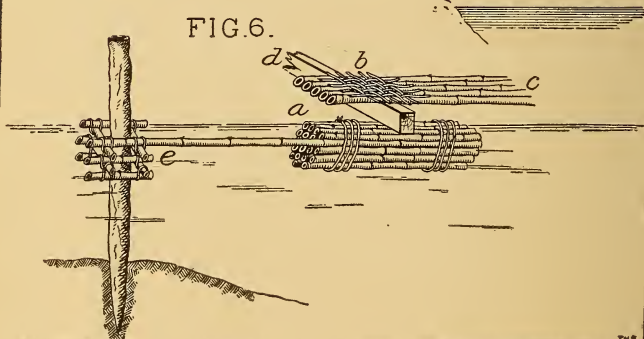




FIG.1.

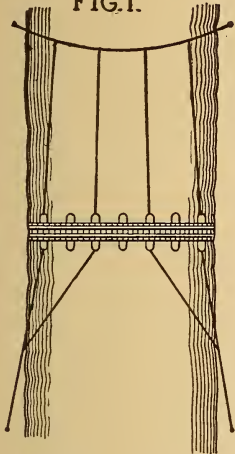


FIG.2.

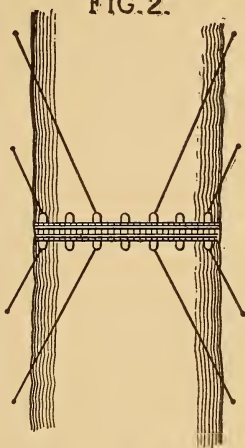


FIG.3.

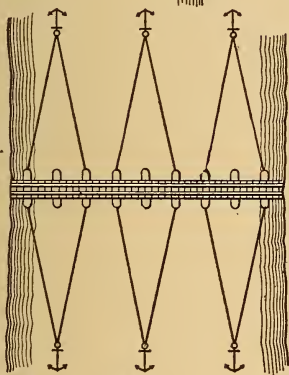


FIG.4.

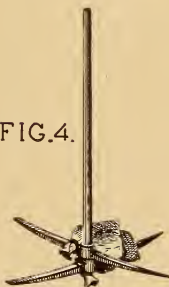


FIG.5.







the transoms and in close contact with the first. The second log is then spiked like the first, and so on for each remaining log. Care must be taken to place the whistle ends up stream with the bevel underneath, and to spike the transoms perpendicular to the logs. If the stream is very gentle, the up-stream ends of the logs need not be placed as in Fig. 5, but may be parallel to the transoms.

*Another method* is to lash the logs together and fasten on the transoms with spikes or trenails. Or, lash the logs together and lash the transoms to the logs, tightening the lashings with rack sticks.

339.—Two additional transoms should be placed on the raft by whatever method employed in putting on the first. They should be the distance of the roadway or platform apart, at equal distances from the center of gravity of the raft, and bear upon all the logs. In order to obtain sufficient buoyancy, and allow sufficient water way, several courses of timber may have to be employed. For use in a bridge, a raft should have an available buoyancy of 15,000 lbs.

340.—If the raft is to be used as a *flying bridge*, it should have the shape of a lozenge. (Pl. 43, Fig. 8.)

340a.—**Bamboo Poles.** Floating piers, consisting of 25 bamboo poles, are lashed together, as shown in Plate 45, Fig. 6, and placed in the bridge perpendicular to the roadway, 10 feet apart. Four balks "d," 2½ in. x 4 in., are placed on these piers. Chesses of bamboo poles "c" are placed on the balks, and on the chesses is placed a bamboo mat "b." The piers may be anchored as shown, the crib "e" being placed around a pile. This arrangement compensates for the rise and fall of the tide. The lashings used in this construction are rattan, as being the material

most easily obtained. This bridge has a width of 10 feet and sufficient buoyancy to permit the passage of infantry in fours.\*

**341.—Anchors.** Anchors for the U. S. Advance Guard Bridge Train weigh 75 lbs., and for the Reserve Train 150 lbs. These will be sufficient for moderate streams. An anchor with the names of the various parts is shown in Pl. 45, Fig. 1.

**342.—**The distance of the anchor from the bridge should be at least 10 times the depth of the stream; otherwise the bow of the boat or ponton will sink too deep in the water. The direction of the cable must be the same as the current. The anchor cable should be of 1 in. rope and attached to the anchor ring by a fisherman's bend. A buoy might be attached to the anchor by means of a ½-in. breast line, in order to mark its position and serve as a means of raising it. The breast line is attached to the buoy ring by a fisherman's bend and round the shank of the anchor, close to the crown, by a clove hitch.

**343.—**The number of anchors will depend on the strength of the current. It is generally sufficient to cast an anchor up-stream for every alternate boat or ponton, and half that number down-stream. If the stream is rapid, every boat should be anchored up-stream.

*If very rapid*, the bridge must be secured to a hawser, as shown in Pl. 46, Fig. 1. If the bridge is short, ropes can be stretched from the piers to the banks. (Fig. 2.) If anchors are scarce, one may be attached to two piers. (Fig. 3.)

Before being cast, the anchor should be well stocked. Rafts of casks or timbers bring a greater strain on anchors than boats or pontons.

**344.—Substitutes for Anchors.** One or two spare wheels with tires and felloes removed. (Pl. 45, Figs. 3 and 4.) Two or

---

\*This bridge was constructed, using native labor by Captain B. F. Cheatham, Q. M. U. S. Army, in June, 1899, and was still in use a year later.

more pick-axes, laid together or fixed on one handle. (Pl. 46, Fig. 4.) A harrow with lengthened teeth, loaded with stones. Gabions filled with stones. Large stones or railway irons. Nets filled with stones. Frame filled with stones. (Pl. 45, Fig. 2.)

Care must be taken to allow the anchor to fall in good holding ground. For this purpose, a direction oblique to the current may sometimes be allowed.

**345.—Forming Floating Bridges.** Floating bridges may be formed in the following ways:—

- (1) By successive pontoons or boats.
- (2) By parts.
- (3) By rafts.
- (4) By conversion.

**346.—By Successive Pontoons.** (Pl. 49.) This may be done in two ways:—

(1) By adding to the head of the bridge, the tail being stationary. This method requires the roadway material to be carried an increasing distance. The men, however, do not have to work in the water.

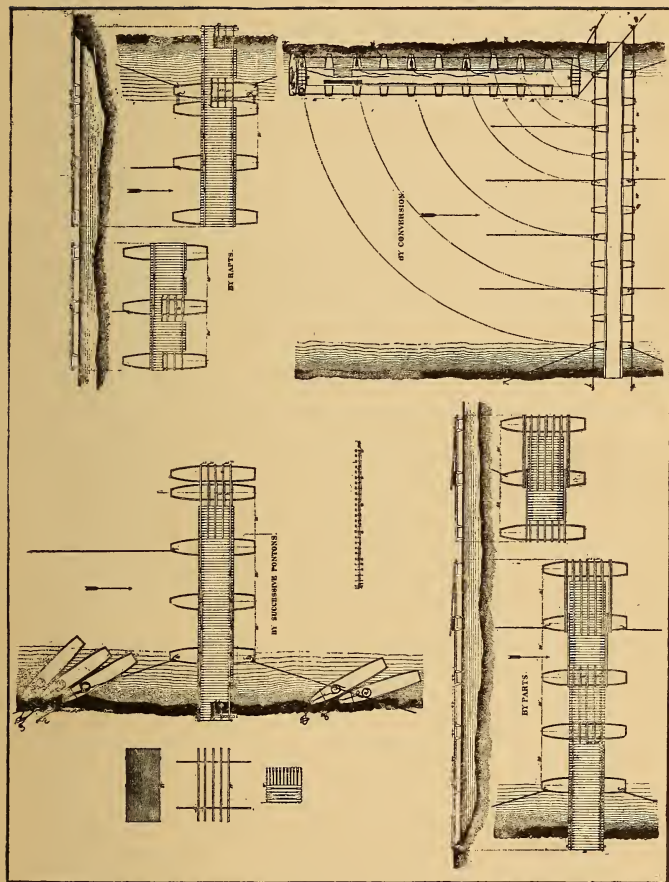
(2) By adding to the tail of the bridge, the head, already constructed, being constantly pushed into the stream. The materials do not have to be carried so far as in the first case, but it requires a number of men to work in the water and is not advantageous where the bank is steep.

In the first method, those boats or pontoons which cast upstream anchors should be moored above the approach to the bridge, the others below.

**347.—By Parts.** (Pl. 49.) In this method, the boats or pontoons are brought close to the shore above the bridge. For convenience in putting the parts together several chess are laid from the bank to the interior gunwale of one boat or ponton. The boats or pontoons forming the part are then brought in place and



PLATE 49.



balks placed on them. The chess forming the roadway are then placed on the balks, excepting a sufficient number at each end of the part to allow for the insertion of a bay between the parts. The parts, all constructed as directed, are then placed in position, each part carrying enough material to construct the connecting bay. The parts are joined with each other and with the abutment bay, which has been previously constructed.

**348.—By Rafts.** Each raft formed of 2 or more piers is constructed complete and the rafts come into the bridge in succession. Each of the methods, bridge by raft and bridge by parts, has the advantage of simultaneously employing a large number of men. (Pl. 49.)

**349.—By Conversion.** (Pl. 49.) In this method, the bridge is put together entire along the shore above the selected site. A tributary stream may be advantageous for this purpose. The bridge is then floated toward the site, care being taken to prevent the pivot end from touching the shore and the wheeling end from turning too fast.

**350.—**The various methods above described may be combined in the construction of one bridge.

The connection of the bridge with the shore may be made by allowing the balks to rest on an abutment sill let about 1 ft. into the ground, or by a trestle.

**351.—**If the stream is to remain open to traffic, it is well to have two or more rafts in mid-stream, arranged to swing so as to allow boats to pass, or the halves of the bridge may be swung for this purpose. Usually the passage is made by allowing the rafts or halves to swing with the current; they are then brought back against the current.

352.—**Floating Objects.** Some arrangement should be made to protect the bridge from floating objects. This may be done:—

(1) By a guard of observation, stationed above the bridge, provided with boats containing anchors, grapnels, hammers, chains, etc. The object may be turned ashore, or, if this is not possible, an anchor may be attached to it to break its momentum.

(2) By a floating stockade, constructed of trees united by chains and forming a continuous barrier to floating objects. Its direction should be about  $20^{\circ}$  with the current.

(3) By constructing the bridge by rafts and withdrawing the menaced part, thus allowing the object to float past.

## CHAPTER XVII.--Roads.

353.—The frequent necessity, in the field, for the construction of a short piece of road, or the repairing of existing roads, makes it important that all who may at any time have this work in charge should be familiar with the principal requirements of it.

354.—Two desirable conditions in a road are that it be straight and level; where both cannot be obtained, straightness is sacrificed to levelness. Other things being equal, the length of a road may often be advantageously increased 20 ft. for every foot of vertical height avoided.

355.—Limiting Gradient. As levelness cannot always be obtained, various considerations fix limits for the steepness, called limiting gradients, which are to be used only when unavoidable; thus, for a very short distance, as an approach to a bridge, the limiting gradient may be 1-10; a grade of 1-12 should not exceed 100 ft.; one of 1-15 should not exceed 200 ft.; 1-20 should ordinarily be the limiting gradient for easy travel, while 1-30 to 1-35 is still better.

356.—Compared to what he can draw on a level, a horse can draw only about 90 per cent on a grade of 1-100, 80 per cent on 1-50, 50 per cent on 1-24, and 25 per cent on 1-10, but for a short distance he can exert 6 times his ordinary force.

357.—A road should, if possible, always rise continuously to its highest point and nowhere descend partially again.

358.—Width. For military purposes roads should be wide enough to allow wagons going in opposite directions to pass each other easily; this is usually taken at 16 ft. For wagons going in one direction only or with turnouts at intervals, and for infantry in column of fours, or cavalry in column of twos, 9 ft. will suf-

# PLATE 50.

FIG. 1

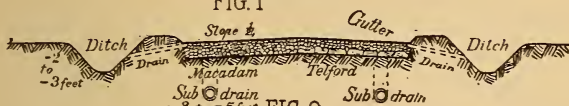


FIG. 2

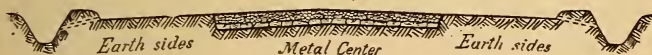


FIG. 3.

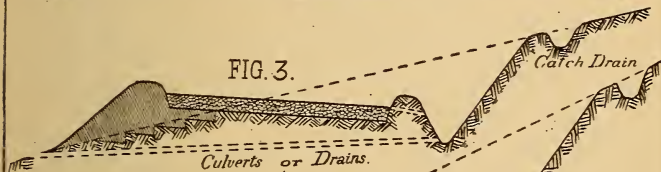
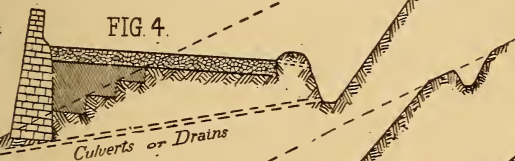


FIG. 10.



Covered Drains.

FIG. 4.



Culverts or Drains

FIG. 5.



FIG. 11.

FIG. 7.

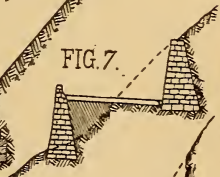


FIG. 6.



FIG. 9.

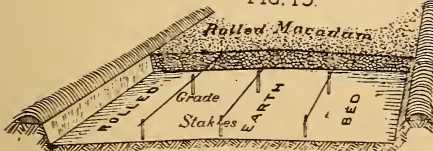


Covered Drains

FIG. 8.



FIG. 13.



rice, and for pack animals 6 ft. At turns in a zig-zag road up a hill the road should be level and the width increased from  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

**359.—Form.** The best for the upper surface is that of two planes inclined at an angle of about 1-24 and joined by a slight curve 5 ft. long. (Pl. 50, Figs. 1, 2 and 13.)

Between the road and ditches should be flat mounds raised 6 in. or more above the surface, with sloping sides covered with sods or stone next to road, forming with roadway the gutters; they serve also to hold up the road material and as warnings at night of the proximity of the ditch.

On the hillside the surface should be a single plane inclined towards the hill, to prevent wagons from slipping towards the outside and to carry the water to the inside ditch. (Figs. 3, 4, 5, 7, and 8.)

**360.—Road-bed.** The surface of the road-bed should be dug out or built up and solidly compacted, either by rolling or ramming, and when ready to receive the road material should be of the same shape as the surface of the finished road, with shoulders at the sides to retain the material in place. (Fig. 13.)

The very life of a road depends, equally with drainage, upon the thoroughness with which the road-bed and the various layers of covering material are rolled and solidly compacted.\*

On hillsides of gentle slope, the road-bed is usually made of half cutting and half filling, the lower side of the slope being stepped to retain the earth excavated (Fig. 3); on steep slopes it is often necessary to both step the slope and build a retaining wall of stone (Fig. 4), or of logs (Fig. 5), or of other materials; on very steep slopes it may be necessary to build retaining walls on

---

\*Macadam roads properly built, by thoroughly rolling the beds with a 20-ton steam roller, and then covering with only 4 inches of broken stone in layers of 2 inches each, and a top dressing, all thoroughly rolled, have withstood heavy traffic for years.



both sides (Fig. 7); while in rocky formations the excavated hill-side may be left nearly vertical. (Fig. 8.)

**361.—Drainage.** Nothing is of greater importance in road-building than proper drainage. It is the life of a road. In a level country it is necessary to raise the road-bed to keep it always free from water. None must be allowed to remain on the surface and all must be drained from beneath. To accomplish this ditches must be dug on both sides of a road on level ground and in cuttings, from 2 to 3 ft. below the road-bed and of a width depending on the amount of water to be discharged. (Figs. 1 and 2.) In wet places, low-lying lands, clayey and springy soils, the ditches must be deeper and sub-drains 3 to 5 ft. below the road, emptying at intervals into the side ditches, must be made to keep it dry. (Fig. 1.)

In drainage **absolute dryness**, like baked earth or dust, is not sought, since a certain amount of moisture is necessary to produce compactness and adhesion. Water and moisture in excess of this amount must be removed; by this is meant drainage. Often in rolling the beds and coverings, when too dry, they are lightly sprinkled to make them compact more firmly; especially is this so with the light top dressing.

Rain falling on the surface of the road is collected in the gutters on the sides and run into the side ditches by drains at frequent intervals.

On a hillside, between the road and the hill is the ditch, from which the water is discharged through culverts or covered drains under the road into the natural watercourses. Catch drains along the top of the cutting are made to prevent the slopes being washed down and the water from above finding its way to the road.

Where open ditches are liable to become filled, some kind of covered drain must be used. (Figs. 5, 10, 11 and 12.)

Theoretically, a road should be perfectly level, but for purposes of drainage, in the direction of its length, it should have at least a slope of 1-125.

On a steep road, shallow paved water tables extending obliquely across the road are sometimes necessary to catch the water running down the road and carry it to the gutters, or small mounds crossing the road obliquely are substituted. (Fig. 9.)

**362.**—The *surface* of a road ought to be as smooth and as hard as possible, for which purpose various kinds of covering material are put on the bed.

As the road-bed must be kept thoroughly dry at all times by the ditches intercepting all ground water, so the stone or other covering must be so thoroughly rolled and compacted that no water falling upon the surface can possibly find its way down to the foundation and through it to the bed.

**363.**—When roads are made of broken stone the material in the Telford class is composed of two parts: the foundation and the covering. (Fig. 1, right half.) The foundation consists of a uniform thickness of not less than 5 in. of any durable broken stone with bases about 5 in. x 10 in. laid close together by hand, larger faces down, firmly wedged with smaller stones in the interstices, and the whole sledged and rolled to a uniform surface. Then a thin layer of binding material, as clay or loam, is sprinkled over it and rolled. On this is put the covering, consisting of a layer of about 3 in. of broken stone of uniform, well-shaped cubical pieces which will pass through a ring from 2 to 2½ in. in diameter, and rolled to a uniform, compact surface. Then another layer of binding material is added and well rolled. Another layer of stones, 3 in. thick, of sizes from 1 to 2 in. in diameter, is next spread and rolled as before. On this may be spread another binding coat, well rolled, then a thin layer of fine screenings or fine gravel free from dirt. Often, where traffic is light

and expense large, a single layer of broken stone 4 in. thick is put on the foundation.

364.—In the Macadam class (Fig. 1, left half) the hand-laid foundation is not used, but generally three layers, each from 3 to 4 in. thick, of broken stone and binding coats, as described above. are spread and rolled until smooth and compact.

For light traffic a single layer of 4 in. is sometimes used.

365.—The best stone is a compact, fine-grained syenite, basalt or trap rock. Hornblend, actinolite, diorite, and some other rocks make good material. Quartz and flint, though very hard, are brittle, difficult to work, and not so good. Granite, on account of mica in it, breaks up and grinds away too easily. Gneiss is poorer than granite. Slatey rocks generally break up too easily. Limestone, generally too soft, grinds away easily, making a very disagreeable dust. Softer stones may be used for the foundations and lower layers, but only the hardest and toughest should be used for the coverings.

366.—Earth roads require even greater care in draining, grading, and forming the surface than those described, and a transverse slope, not less than 1-20, to hasten the flow of surface water to the gutters. No sods or vegetable refuse should be allowed in grading or filling ruts, only gravelly earth, if obtainable.

Roads are frequently made with a metal portion in the center and earth roads, called *wings*, on the sides. (Fig. 2.)

367.—It is almost impossible to construct a road of clay which will be good in wet weather, but such roads have been greatly improved by burning enough of the clay to make a kind of brick top dressing, or piling wood along the road and burning the clay in place, destroying its quality as clay; but a very sandy road may be improved by working a little clay in it.

**368.**—For gravel roads the bed is first formed as described. The gravel is screened to remove stones larger than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. in diameter and such as are less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  in.; and all earthy matter. A layer of the screened gravel, 4 or 5 in. thick, is then spread and rolled, then another layer of 3 or 4 in., which should also be well rolled.

**369.**—Repairs. Ruts appearing should be immediately filled in, and traffic directed over all parts of road. Before spreading stones, all mud should be cleaned off and the surface picked up a little to allow the new stone to bind into the old, wet weather being preferred, or the stones should be sprinkled. Ditches and culverts must be cleaned as needed.

**370.**—In crossing marshy ground that cannot be well drained, corduroy roads made of logs of suitable lengths laid side by side across the road, over which is spread a covering of earth or gravel, are sometimes used.

**371.**—Brushwood, made into fascines and hurdles, may be used the same way as a foundation. With fascines, the top row should extend across the road and be of a length equal to the width of road. (Fig. 6.)

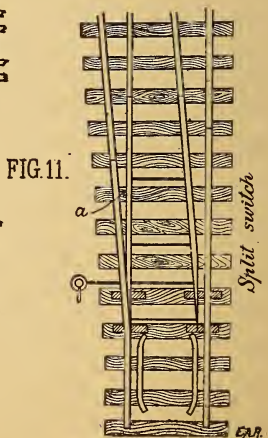
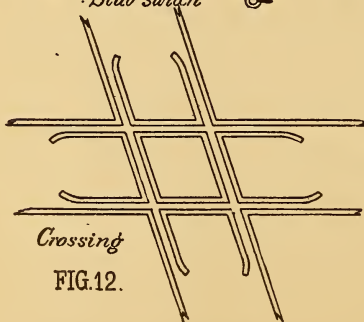
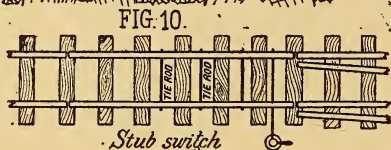
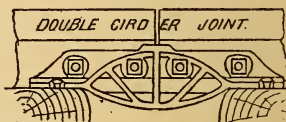
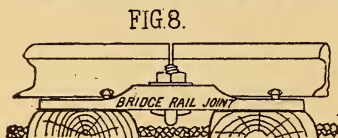
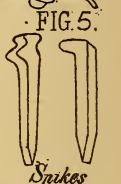
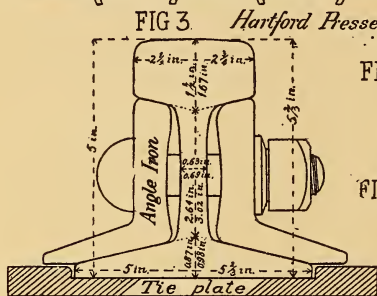
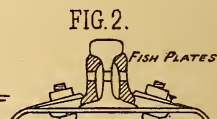
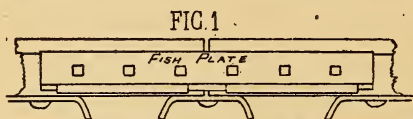
**372.**—Where lumber is the cheapest material, plank roads may be built by first laying parallel rows of sleepers or sills flush with the ground, about 4 ft. apart, in the direction of the road, on which boards, 3 in. thick by 9 to 12 in. wide and 8 ft. long, are placed crosswise.

**373.**—The construction of communications to all parts of a position to facilitate the movement of troops, etc., from one part to another, is almost always a certain necessity. These would rarely be more than temporary, but, if made on the lines indi-

cated, as far as time and requirements permitted, so much the better.

374.—Roads and paths may have to be cleared through woods; wet places made passable by corduroying or filling up with brush, fascines, etc.; and approaches made to ascend steep places.

Wherever roads cross or separate, signs should be put up telling exactly where each leads.





## CHAPTER XVIII.—Railroads.

375.—In military operations, the principal duties of troops in connection with railroads will be either the repairing of lines that have been partially destroyed, or the destruction of lines to prevent their use by the enemy.

376.—A railroad, as existing in its completed form, will be briefly described to indicate the state to which it should be brought by repairs after destruction, and to so familiarize one with it as to suggest methods of most effectually destroying it.

377.—A railway line consists of a series of straight lines of different lengths, called tangents, which are joined by curves. The road-bed is first prepared with a smooth hard surface (sloping slightly from the middle to each side for drainage) from 10 to 12 ft. wide for a single track, and from 21 to 25 ft. for a double track. On this is placed the ballast, from 12 to 24 in. thick, of broken stone, gravel or cinders, etc., for the purpose of distributing the load over a larger surface, holding the ties in place, carrying off the rainwater, affording a means of keeping the ties up to grade line and giving elasticity to the road-bed.

378.—The ties are generally of wood, hewn flat on top and bottom, from 7.5 to 9 ft. long, 6 to 10 in. wide, and about 7 in. deep. It is customary to sink them about half their depth into the ballast. Their object is to hold the rails in place and furnish an elastic medium between the rails and ground. The distance apart is usually 2.5 ft. from center to center, but depends upon weight of engines and strength of rails. They should be uniformly spaced to distribute the weight equally.

Tie plates (Pl. 51, Figs. 3 and 7) are often used to prevent the rails from crushing into the ties.

379.—Tests of metal ties in the interests of economy and effi-

ciency have been made with satisfactory results. On some level portions of the N. Y. Central R. R. are used the Hartford pressed steel tie (Figs. 1 and 2), to which the rails are fastened by clamps bolted to the tie.

380.—The form of rail used in the United States is shown in Fig. 3, being the "T" rail, which varies in weight from 12 to 100 lbs. per yard. The mean dimensions of 80 lb. rails are given on left-hand side of figure and of 100 lb. rails on right-hand side. They are placed 3 ft. apart for narrow gauge, 4 ft. 8.5 in. for standard gauge, while 6 ft. is the broadest gauge in the United States, measured from inside to inside of head. The tops of rails must be slightly inclined to fit the cones of the wheels.

381.—The weak part of a track is at the joints. The old method of using chairs under the ends of rails has about ceased, the practice now being to fish the joints by plates (Fig. 1), and angle irons. (Fig. 3.) There are also used what are known as the Reinforced rail joints (Fig. 4), Bridge rail joints (Fig. 8), Double Girder rail joints. (Fig. 9.)

382.—Rails are fastened to the ties by spikes, the best being made with sharp, chisel-edge points, clean, sharp edges, and smooth surfaces, so as to cut and press aside the fibers of the wood, instead of tearing them. Attempts to increase the holding power by jagged or twisted spikes have been unsuccessful. On bridges, interlocking bolts (Fig. 6) are much used instead of spikes. To keep the track in the right line, allowance must be made for the contraction and expansion of the rails, by not placing them in contact at the joints, and the holes for the bolts must be elongated.

383.—The centrifugal force of a train passing around a curve tends to throw the wheels against the outer rails, which is partially counteracted by raising them to throw the center of gravity

inward and cause the car to slide inward. Each rail in a curve ought to be bent to fit the curve before being laid.

384.—On single tracks, there are laid at occasional intervals short pieces of track, called sidings, to enable trains to pass one another. The arrangement for passing from one track to another is the switch, which consists of a single length of rails, movable at one end by a lever, so as to connect with either pair of rails. The simplest form is the stub switch (Fig. 10), which leaves one line always open while the other is continuous. The one in common use is the split or point switch. (Fig. 11.) Various devices are used for locking and interlocking switches, to avoid accidents. At the points where the inner rails cross is placed a frog (Pl. 52, Fig. 1), which enables the wheels to pass over the inner rail of the other track.

385.—Crossings occur where two tracks intersect, and consist of four frogs and corresponding guard rails. (Pl. 51, Fig. 12.)

386.—Where one main line passes to another is called a junction and the ordinary switch is used. In crossing from one track to a parallel track the rails are arranged as in Pl. 52, Fig. 2.

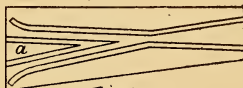
387.—A wye, from a similarity to the letter "Y," is an arrangement of tracks for turning around engines and cars and connecting cross-roads. (Fig. 3.)

388.—Turntables are platforms, turning on rollers upon an underground circular track, used to transfer engines and cars from one track to another and to turn them around.

389.—The locomotive engine is the power on railroads. They weigh up to 232,000 lbs. without tender, and to 292,000 lbs. for passenger to 365,000 lbs. for freight, with tender, and draw 2,400 or more tons on a level. The amount of coal consumed being from 40 lbs. to 70 lbs. per mile run.

390.—The rolling stock consists of passenger cars for about 60 persons, 48 to 52 ft. long, 9.5 ft. wide, weighing from 40,000 lbs.

FIG 1



*Frog*

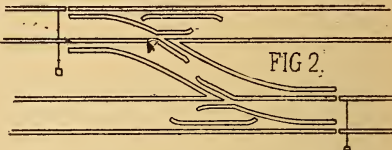


FIG 2.

FIG. 4.

*M.C.B. Coupler*

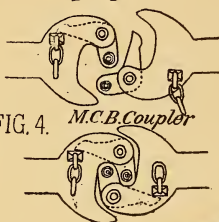


FIG. 5.

*Improvised wrench*

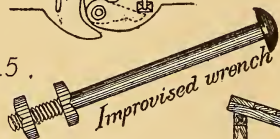


FIG 6.

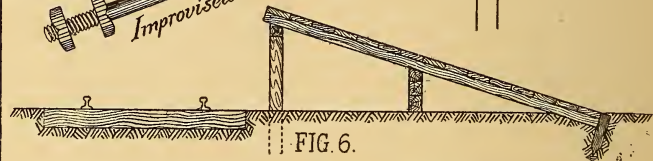


FIG. 7.

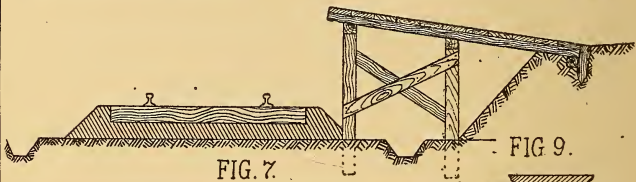
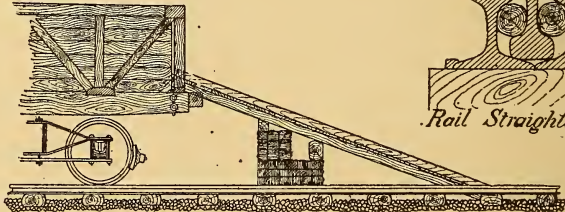


FIG 9.



*Rail Straightener*

FIG. 8.



to 60,000 lbs.; sleeping cars for 64 passengers, 60 to 70 ft. long, 9.8 ft. wide, weighing 60,000 lbs. to 90,000 lbs.; mail, express and baggage cars, 45 ft. long, 9.3 ft. wide, weighing about 27,000 lbs.; freight cars consist of Box, Refrigerator, Hay, Furniture, Oil, Stock, etc., and are about 34 ft. long, 8.5 ft. wide, weighing from 20,000 lbs. to 30,000 lbs., capacity 20 to 30 tons; flat cars, 34 ft. long, weighing 16,000 lbs. to 19,000 lbs. Height of top of box cars above rails about 15 ft. Freight cars are being rapidly provided with the M. C. B. automatic couplers. (Fig. 4.)

391.—The buildings consist of passenger and freight depots, engine houses, fuel sheds, water tanks, repair shops, and section houses. At convenient points are generally located yards where stock can be loaded and unloaded. It may sometimes be necessary, however, to load and unload animals and supplies in the field along a railroad where there are no platforms or other conveniences, which must then be built.

392.—A simple form of ramp, in the absence of anything better, could be made by taking 3 or 4 planks 3 in. thick, 10 to 12 in. wide, and 10 to 14 ft. long, fastening them together side by side, preferably by footholds nailed across on top and several cleats on the bottom; otherwise, by lashing, wiring or by stakes at the bottom when in position, and wedges in the car door. The ends on the ground should be slightly sunken and rested against a cross beam. Ropes should be hung along the sides and blankets or canvas hung on them. Props of some kind, as sacks of grain, bales of hay, etc., can be placed under the middle to strengthen it if necessary.

393.—Another form of *portable ramp*, which could be carried on all railroad trains where they might be needed, consists of 6 long timbers 4 in. x 4 in. x 14 ft., 6 short timbers 4 in. x 4 in. x 6 ft., 24 boards 1.5 in. x 12 in. x 6 ft. with footholds nailed lengthwise on one side.



To load or unload horses, rest the ends of three or four of the long timbers, equally spaced, on the car floor, the other ends resting against a short timber, sunk in the ground and staked down. On these place the boards forming the floor; on each side of the ramp, on the boards, lay a long timber and fasten the ends to the timbers underneath. The boards should have cleats on under side to prevent slipping sideways. If necessary, some of the remaining boards can be set edgewise between posts of the short timbers as an intermediate support.

394.—*To unload a number of cars*, enough men can be placed under the ramp, near the car, to raise it high enough to allow the car to be removed and another run in place, thus avoiding taking the ramp apart for each car.

395.—*Semi-permanent platforms and ramps* may be made as in Figs. 6 and 7, if rails and boards are available.

396.—*To load or unload wagons and guns* from a flat car, place the ramp against one end (Fig. 8), using four long timbers for stringers on which the boards are placed, the other two long timbers being used for side rails. Support underneath with boards set on edge, held between some short timbers, or with bales of hay, sacks of grain or otherwise, as necessary. A couple of boards can be used to run the wheels from the car on to the ramp and others at the foot of ramp to carry the wheels across the rails. The lower ends of the stringers should abut against a tie, if possible; if not, they should be staked down.

397.—Portable railroads will probably, in the future, play an important part in the military operations. They should be light, arranged to be laid directly on the natural surface of the ground, or require only a small amount of road-bed construction, should be laid in rail lengths, the rails being connected permanently to the sleepers before being laid, sleepers preferably of pressed iron or steel. If a long line is to be laid, it may be done in



sections, taken up when no longer needed, and relaid elsewhere. Curves of various degrees should always be kept on hand and sidings should be laid at short intervals.

398.—Disabling and destroying railroads. Under the head of *disabling* will be mentioned means, the effects of which will only temporarily interrupt traffic, leaving the road repairable after some delay.

399.—Under *destroying*, such as are more serious in their effects; either causing extensive repairs or a change of route to avoid them.

400.—The disabling of railroads will usually be done by raiding parties of cavalry, while the destroying of them may be done by such parties or by specially detailed troops trained for such service.

401.—It must be understood that no railroad is to be destroyed except upon the orders of the officer commanding in the field. If otherwise, and it should be taken from the enemy, the damage done might seriously embarrass future operations. Before ordering any destruction the questions will arise—"Is destruction absolutely necessary?" "Will it be of no further use and is every hope of regaining it gone?" "Are the advantages to be gained sufficient to compensate for the damage that will be done?" All the attending circumstances should be carefully considered, especially if in one's own country. The choice of points for destruction and the most effective means are subjects for study. It is useless to destroy anything that will not seriously embarrass traffic.

402.—A railroad may be disabled by removing rails at various intervals, then destroying or hiding them; or, if a large number of men are at hand, select a high embankment, line the men along on one side of the track, disconnect the rails at each end of the line of men, then, at a signal, they raise the track on edge and

let rails and ties together go over the embankment. Thus treated, rails and ties must be separated before being replaced. An improvised wrench for removing nuts on fish-plates is a bolt with two nuts on it, just far enough apart to grasp the nut to be removed. (Pl. 52, Fig. 5.) If time is an object, remove outside rails on a curve, or disconnect a joint on each side and throw them as a switch to derail the train either on an embankment or in a cut, or use explosives as described in Chap. XX.

By laying rails across a pile of burning ties until red hot in the middle they may be easily bent around a tree or telegraph pole; they may be twisted by heating, as above, then using bars or pick-axes placed in the holes in each end and working in opposite directions.

They may be torn from the ties and twisted cold by using Gen. Haupt's "U"-shaped rail-twister, shown on Pl. 40, Fig. 8. Ten men with two twisters, two axes, two stout pieces of rope 35 ft. long, can tear up and twist a rail in 5 minutes. The junctions of lines are important points to attack to disable a track.

Water tanks may be rendered useless for a time by breaking holes in them, removing pistons from pumps, etc. Fuel, ties, and small bridges may be burned. Engines may be disabled by burning out the flues, removing or breaking different parts of the machinery, filling suction pipes of pumps with waste, or by removing bolts from eccentric straps, etc. Cars may be disabled by removing couplers, axle boxes, breaking or removing trucks, etc. The use of mines under the tracks, so arranged as to be exploded by the passing of trains, is an effective method of interrupting traffic and shaking the morale of troops being transported.

403.—*To destroy a railroad*, if time is sufficient, remove rolling stock, rails, etc., to the rear. Otherwise, destroy large bridges, if of wood, by burning, using oil if it can be obtained, or by ex-

plosives, as in Chapter XX.; if of iron, steel, or masonry, by explosives, as in Chapter XX. If there are tunnels on the line, not cut through solid rock, which would be nearly proof against destruction without proper tools and much time and labor, select the longest ones, preferably through loose material like sand or light earth with a brick or similar lining, and blow them in at as many points as possible; or cause two wild trains to collide in the middle, afterwards blowing in the ends. Deep cuttings with retaining walls may be filled in by the use of explosives. If trees, poles, wires, etc., can be mixed in, so much the better. Blow up tanks and engines, and burn all fuel, cars, repair supplies, etc. Fire a cannon ball through engines.

404.—The repair of railroads will best be accomplished by a construction corps having some of the elements of permanency in its organization; or, at least, by small squads of experienced men, to which others could be added by temporary detail, whenever active operations require such increase. They should be established as near to where their services may be needed as possible.

405.—Bridges should, in the beginning, be classified and numbered, so that a single reference to the class and number will give complete information as to its character, dimensions *etc.* At designated points will be kept on hand, already prepared for putting in bridge, suitable materials for the repair of each class. This was done by the Union Army from 1861 to 1865, so that, when word was received that a certain bridge had been destroyed, by a reference to the class and number the reconstruction corps started out carrying with it just what was needed to repair the bridge. Even complete trusses for the larger class of bridges were prepared and kept ready for use.

406.—Tunnels and cuts which have been filled up can generally be cleared only from the two ends.

407.—Rails, fish-plates, spikes, ties, etc., will be kept in store at secure places, for repairing any portions of destroyed track. Rails which have been simply bent can be straightened by various means. Gen. Haupt's method was as follows: Two ties were placed on the ground, across these two more ties and on top a single tie, which was cut across one-half the depth of the rail to receive it and prevent it turning. Weight was applied at the two ends of the rail by men bearing down on poles placed thereon. The rail being moved back and forth until straightened, requiring from 4 to 5 minutes. Rails which had been heated and bent to a very sharp angle required more time, necessitating reheating and hammering until straightened. For this purpose, at special points, were prepared furnaces consisting of two parallel walls of brick, stone or clay, with a kind of grate. The straightening table consisted of a large, square timber as long as a rail, on which were securely fastened three rails, as in Pl. 52, Fig. 9, on which the heated rail was laid and hammered until straightened. Twisted rails require rerolling before they can be again used.

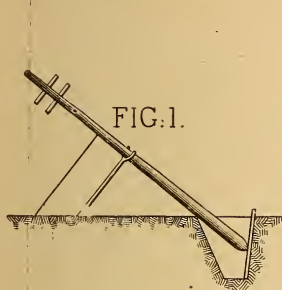


FIG. 1.

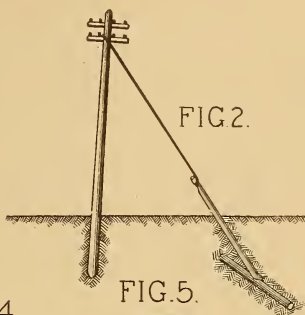


FIG. 2.

FIG. 3.

FIG. 4.

FIG. 5.

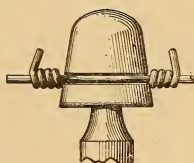


FIG. 9.

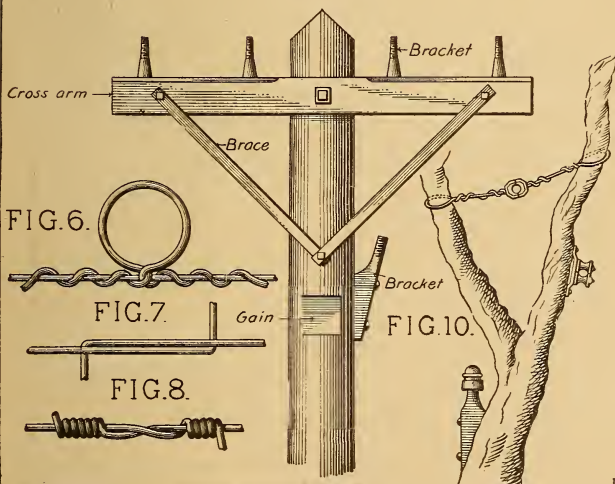


FIG. 6.

FIG. 7.

FIG. 8.

FIG. 10.

FIG. 1.

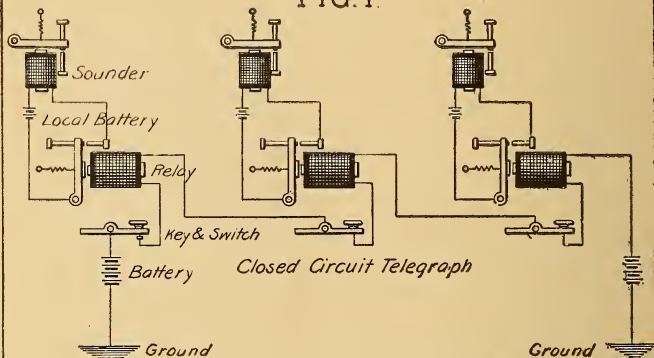


FIG. 3.

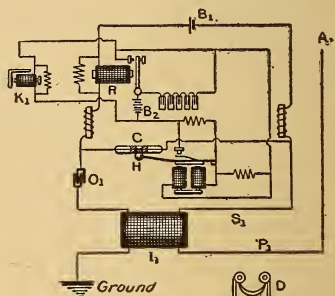


FIG. 2.

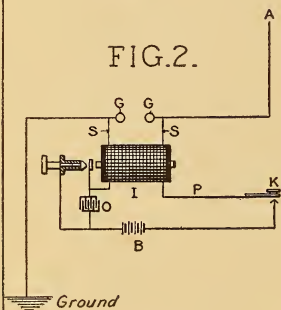


FIG. 5.

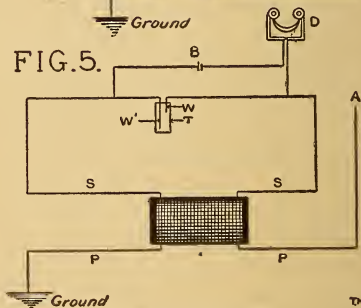
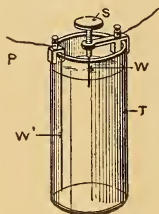


FIG. 4.





## CHAPTER XIX.—Telegraph and Telephone Lines.

408.—Telegraph and telephone lines are usually constructed by the Signal Corps. The following information, however, may be useful for troops of all arms:

In order that telegraph messages may be sent from one point to another, it is necessary that there be a continuous conductor from the first to the second point, and that this conductor be insulated from contact with the ground or with anything leading to the ground. The conductor used in the construction of telegraph or telephone lines is of galvanized iron or copper wire. The wire may be used as a single wire or as a cable (a number of small wires twisted together). The conductor may be naked or with an insulating covering, and may be suspended as an aerial line carried on poles and tied to glass insulators; laid on the ground (in this case the wire is insulated); laid under the ground as a subterranean line (in this case the wire is insulated, lead sheathed, and preferably run in a conduit); or laid under water as a submarine line (in this case the wire is thoroughly insulated and lead sheathed).

Lines on poles or laid on the ground are the military expedients ordinarily used for hasty work.

409.—**Pole Lines.** For permanent lines, poles should be not less than 22 feet in length nor less than 7 and 5 inches in diameter at the larger and smaller ends respectively; but may be as much longer and larger as desired, and should be stripped of bark and the tops made wedge shape. The holes for poles should be not less than 1-6 of the length of the pole in depth.

The pole should be raised as shown on Pl. 54, Fig. 1, and held vertically while the excavated earth is thoroughly tamped in from bottom to top; after the hole is completely filled, the

earth should be made into a small mound, so as to shed water. Poles should be vertical except when necessary to incline them to resist strains, when they will be set at a slight inclination in such manner that the component of the strain in the direction of the length of pole will tend to press it into the ground. Where exposed to great strains, or to continuously high winds, it may be necessary to guy the poles. This is done with stays consisting of two or more line wires twisted together and fastened near the top of the pole, the ground end being attached to a section of a pole or timbers suitably anchored in the ground, as shown in Fig. 2. Where possible, a line of poles should be run on one side of the road and far enough from it to be safe from accidental damage by passing wagons. Where roads have to be crossed, the wire should be carried over on high poles so as to clear any possible wagon-loads. The poles should be numbered at each mile so as to aid line-men to repair and replace breaks.

**410.—Brackets and Cross-arms.** (Figs. 9 and 10.) Brackets for carrying insulators may be attached to poles, cross-arms, chimneys, walls, or trees. When the brackets are attached to a pole directly, a seat should be cut in the pole with a hatchet and the bracket should be nailed on, using one 20-penny and one 40-penny nail. Where the poles are intended to carry several wires, cross-arms are bolted to the poles, fitting into seats or gains cut for them. The arms carry brackets not less than 15 inches apart. The arms should not be less than 20 inches from one another. Not less than 25 poles to the mile should be used, and usually the number is increased to 30 in difficult country or where the road which the line follows is tortuous.

**411.—Lightning Arresters.** Every fifth pole should be protected from lightning discharges by having a piece of line wire run from about 6 inches above the top of the pole to the

ground. This wire must be so arranged that it cannot come in contact with the line wire should that become unfastened.

412.—The insulators in common use in this country are of glass and of the form shown in Fig. 3. The one shown in Fig. 4 is preferable, as it is not so liable to cause leaks on account of moisture accumulating and forming a connecting film to the bracket and from that to the pole.

413.—*Ties.* These are generally of the same wire as the line. They are annealed and formed on an insulator and cut long enough to embrace the insulator and project 3 or 4 inches beyond the line wire. (Fig. 5.)

414.—*To Hang the Wire.* The wire is carried up to the top of the pole and the lineman places a tie on the insulator, the line wire against the insulator above the tie wire, and bends the end of the wire upward so as to sustain the line wire. The line wire is then strained by the lineman, either by means of hand power or by use of the wagon carrying the reel. When the line wire is stretched so that it sags about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  feet in 70 yards, the tie wire is wrapped around it about one and a half times, finishing with the ends of the tie wire pointing towards the insulator; this secures the line and completes the work. (Fig. 5.)

415.—*In open country* the line wire is strung on the insulator on the side toward the pole, so that, if it becomes accidentally untied, the wire will not drop. *If in timbered country*, then hang it on the side from the pole, so that when trees, etc., fall against the wire, it will simply tear it away from the insulator, but will not break the line wire. When necessary to hang the wire on trees, a regular tree insulator should be used, and in default of this the tie shown in Fig. 6 may be used, the ends being wound loosely so as to allow of an easy lateral motion to accommodate the swing of the tree.

Streams are crossed by hanging the wires on strong, high supports, taking care not to strain the wire so much as to cause it to break.

416.—The description of instruments and batteries, their connections and care, will be found in Manual No. 3, "Electrical instruments and Telephones of the United States Signal Corps," 1905 edition. Pl. 54A, Fig. 1, shows the usual method of connecting up a telegraph line and the instruments employed thereon.

Where the wire is laid on the ground, it is insulated, and should be replaced as soon as practicable by a line constructed by the field telegraph and telephone service, erected on poles.

417.—**Joints.** Where wires have to be joined to preserve the continuity of the metallic circuit, the best joint is the American twist joint. To make this, clean the wires for a length of 5 or 6 inches and make a right-angle bend in each wire about 4 inches from the end; now join the wires so that the ends project on different sides and clamp both wires with a hand vise, then with a splicing iron turn the ends around the line wire, making the turns as close as possible; after the entire end is turned around the line wire, cut off the projecting end and dip the joint into melted solder; this protects the joint against rusting. The details of this joint-making are shown in Pl. 54, Figs. 7 and 8.

418.—**Military Lines** are generally of the kind designated as flying lines—*i. e.*, they are intended to accompany the army in the field, are constructed quickly for temporary use, and are as quickly dismantled and taken up. The poles used are small poles, called lances, each about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter and 17 feet in length, placed 2 feet in the ground, and run about 40 to the mile. The batteries, line lances, and instruments are carried in wagons which accompany the army.

The transportation of a field telegraph company assigned to furnish semi-permanent and flying lines for telegraph and telephone work will be approximately as follows:

3 construction wagons for carrying tools and line construction material. The wagons are the escort type supplied by the Quartermaster's Department.

4 lance trucks, the wheels and running gear conforming to the standard escort wagon.

4 reel wagons, pintle type; all four wheels to be of the size of the rear wheels of an escort wagon.

4 instrument wagons of the light spring type, with a bed for dos-à-dos seats and wing sides; a canvas wagon cover to be provided.

6 reel carts with take-up mechanism; two-horse tandem. The reels are provided with take-up mechanism.

The above transportation provides the means for carrying all tools, instruments, and materials for a complete telegraph and telephone service.

For special hasty work and for repairs an auto telergaph wagon and an auto repair wagon may be added to the transportation above mentioned.

419.—Faults are generally of three kinds: breaks or disconnections, leaks or escapes, and crosses or contacts.

For overcoming great resistance, either due to faults above mentioned or to a long line and weak batteries, a buzzer may be used.

**The Buzzer.**—*Theory of the Buzzer.* The principles upon which this instrument operates depend upon the comparatively high voltage developed at the terminals of the electro-magnet when the battery current through it is suddenly interrupted, and upon the sensitiveness of the telephone as a receiving instrument for feeble momentary currents, especially when they are

of the sharply accentuated character produced in the manner just described. An automatic make-and-break vibrator gives a buzzing sound in the telephone receiver, which, by short or long contacts of the key, produces the dot or dash of the Morse alphabet.

This important instrument has been perfected by General James Allen, chief signal officer, U. S. Army, so as to make it a most useful adjunct to an army operating in the field.

The buzzer may be of the service or of the cavalry type. It does not interfere with the use of the telephone. A complete description of this instrument will be found in Chapter VII., Manual No. 3, "Electrical Instruments and Telephones of the United States Signal Corps," 1905.\*

*\*The Tel-auto-graph* is an instrument for electrically producing at a distance handwriting, drawings, etc. The instrument will hardly be used in field service, and is adapted chiefly for the use of coast artillery.

*Wireless Telegraphy:* The sending of messages by wireless telegraphy may be a necessity due to lack of a metallic conductor or to interference by the enemy. The apparatus therefor may be carried in a wagon, or in a specially devised cart, or on a pack animal; and consists essentially of the following parts:

*Sending Apparatus:* (Plate 54A, Fig. 2.) One or any number of vertical wires A, called antennæ, are suspended by the use of a mast, kite, balloon, or other support. When there are several wires, the lower ends should be joined together. The spark gap is shown in the figure as metallic globes GG, the vertical wires, or antennæ, being connected to G, one of the globes. The other globe is grounded as shown in the figure. From the globes GG wires SS are run to and connected with the secondary winding of an induction coil I. The primary of this induction coil is connected in series with a battery B, condenser O, and a key K, which is open as shown. When the key K is closed, the primary circuit is completed and a strong current is induced in the secondary, which causes a spark from the globes GG. The distance between the globes or spark gap depends upon the strength of the battery and the windings of the induction coil; and should be such as to give an air-gap of from 8 to 10 inches—1 to 2 inches being ordinarily used. The disturbance thus generated is transmitted to the air by the antennæ; this disturbance is found to travel best over water; messages have been sent a distance of more than 2,500 miles. Various methods of making the connections (direct or inductively) are used, and the sending apparatus



420.—Telegraph lines should never be damaged or destroyed, except in obedience to direct orders. Faults may be made by connecting the wires together with small wire (this makes a

is designated accordingly as the Slabo-Arco, the Massie, the Fessenden, the De Forest and Shoemaker, the Telefunken and the Stone.

*Receiving Apparatus:* Four types of detectors are in general use, the Coherer, the Microphone, the Magnetic and the Electrolytic. Two types only will be described. *Coherer Type:* (Fig. 3.) This consists of the antennæ  $A_1$  carried to ground through the Primary  $P_1$  of an induction coil  $I^1$ . These antennæ receive a disturbance from the sending apparatus and generate a current in the secondary  $S_1$  of the induction coil  $I_1$ , which is connected in series with the coherer C, battery B, and relay R, thus operating a Morse receiver  $K_1$  on a local circuit with battery  $B_2$  as indicated, printing the message in Morse or other characters.

The coherer C, which is an essential element of this apparatus, consists of a tube 11-2 inches long and 1-12 inch internal diameter. A chamber is made in the center by introducing two silver plugs with their ends 1-30 of an inch apart. A mixture of 90 per cent of nickel filings and 10 per cent silver filings is contained in this tube with a minute quantity of mercury.

The normal resistance of the filings filling the gap is so great as to normally practically prevent a passage of current. The current generated by the disturbance from the sending station is such as to overcome this resistance, causing the filings to cohere, thus allowing the current to flow through the coherer. The resistance being thus destroyed must be restored. This is done mechanically by a hammer H so arranged as to tap the tube, thus disturbing the filings, so that the next disturbance may be detected.

*Receiving Apparatus — Electrolytic Type:* In Fig. 5, showing this type of receiving apparatus, the antennæ A are connected with the primary P of the induction coil I, which is grounded as shown. The secondaries S of this coil are connected in series with the detector cell T, containing the electrolyte, the battery B, and the double-head telephone receiver D. This form of apparatus is used only in connection with telephones.

The various forms of this type of receiver are known as the liquid barreter, the electrolytic responder, and the electrolytic receiver. The principle in all is the same. Fig. 4 shows one form of the electrolytic detector.

A small glass cell or tube T is partially filled with electrolyte (sulphuric acid). In this is inserted a small platinum wire W of extreme fineness, which is attached to the adjusting screw S. Another platinum wire  $W^1$ , immersed as shown, is connected

bad cross), or they may be connected with the lightning rods on the poles, thus running them to the ground.

When an office is taken, the instruments should all be disconnected and destroyed or taken away; the ends of the wires should be tied together. The batteries, if any, should be disconnected. To destroy the line, cut down the poles and burn them and cut the wire into small lengths. Subaqueous lines should be brought up with a grapnel and a piece cut out and cut into small pieces and thrown back into the water. Subterranean lines are generally laid in conduits, and at regular intervals man-holes are built to allow repairs; the line may be detected by these man-holes, the conduit destroyed, and the cables disconnected.

to a copper wire at the binding post P. The wire W is also in circuit with the copper wire through a binding post as shown. The adjustment of the wire W must be such that hydrogen bubbles will form a coating thereon. The disturbance generated by the sending apparatus is, on account of this detector, plainly to be heard through the telephone receiver D, Fig. 5.

There are various methods of connecting up receiving sets, either directly or inductively, and they are designated accordingly, as in the case of sending apparatus.

## CHAPTER XX.—Demolitions.

421.—In military operations demolitions must be made with the least possible expenditure of time and explosive. Nevertheless, a charge which in itself seems large for the object intended may prove economical, in that it errs on the right side and a repetition of the work is not made necessary.

Military engineers, or troops acting as such, or troops of the line on occasion, may have to destroy bridges, houses, walls, railroads, tunnels, stockades, palisades, gates, cannon, etc., break up roads, fell trees, and place mines. On account of their portability, great destructive effect, and facility of handling, high explosives should generally be used in all these operations. However, where ordinary gunpowder is available, it may be used to advantage, if time permits its proper placing and tamping. Gun-cotton is the standard explosive for military work, and all formulas are calculated for its use.

Joveite, a picrate powder, claimed to be safe and 75 per cent of strength of dynamite, put up in sticks, exploded by blasting caps and fuse or electric primer, has been tested with good results

422.—Gun-cotton, as made at the U. S. Naval Torpedo Station, is in blocks about 3 in. square and 2 in. thick; each block is perforated to allow the insertion of a detonator, and, when dry, weighs about 10 oz. When necessary to use a smaller amount than 10 oz., a block may be cut, when wet, by using a saw or sharp knife, care being taken to place it between two boards, so that it will not flake or crack during the operation.

Gun-cotton, as furnished by the U. S. Ordnance Department, is in small rectangular blocks weighing about 1-8 oz. The blocks contain about 15 per cent of water, are coated with varnish,

and can be shipped or handled with safety. For use, a paper or cardboard cylinder is made and the blocks placed in it. The detonator is inserted in a prepared primer, which is placed between the blocks.

Gun-cotton will absorb about 30 per cent of its weight of water, and, when in this condition, is comparatively safe, as it can only be ignited by fire and is difficult of detonation. When packed for transportation the blocks are placed, while wet, in a tin can; the can is hermetically sealed or is left so that the water can be replaced when it has evaporated.

When both are well tamped, gun-cotton has an explosive force two times as great as gunpowder; when no tamping is used, it has a force four times as great.

**423.—Primers.** Wet gun-cotton detonates with much greater force than dry, but it is necessary that this action be set up by the detonation of a dry primer of gun-cotton placed in intimate contact with the wet charge. When wet gun-cotton is carried, a sufficient quantity for a primer may be taken from the wet case, placed in the sun and allowed to dry; it is better, however, in operations in the field, to carry a small amount of dry gun-cotton, so as not to waste time in drying the primer.

When used in holes, gun-cotton should be dry, as wet gun-cotton is difficult to detonate under such circumstances.

**424.—Dynamite.** Dynamite comes in cartridges or sticks weighing 8 ozs. each, and may be used instead of gun-cotton, but it is more dangerous to handle and to use. It should not be used, however, if exposed to wet or if frozen. Frozen dynamite can be thawed by placing it in an apparatus like a glue pot, the dynamite being in the inner vessel and the hot water in the outer. It must not be thawed at a fire.

Gunpowder may sometimes be used in demolitions, especially when upheaving and displacing effect is desired, rather than a

# PLATE 55.

Figure 1.

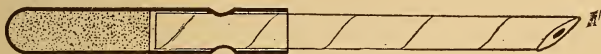
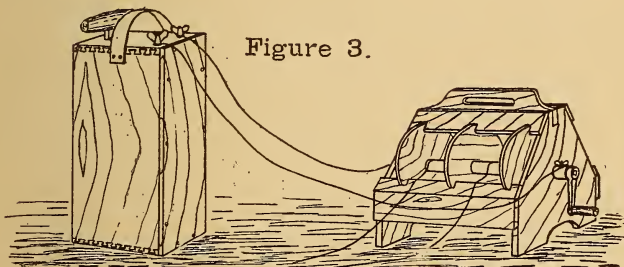


Figure 2.



Figure 3.



Figure

5.

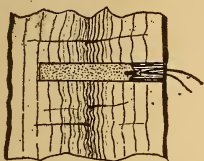


Figure 4.



Figure

6.



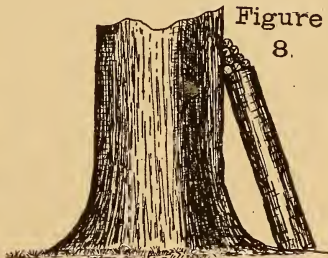
Figure

7.



Figure

8.



cutting and shattering effect; and when so employed, it should be placed in stout bags, preferably two, the outer one well tarred. This is to protect from accidental explosion occasioned by sparks from the fuse.

425.—Explosives should be placed in as close contact as possible with the object to be destroyed, and the packages composing the charge should be in intimate contact with each other.

426.—**Common Detonator.** The common detonator is a copper tube, about  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. in diameter, closed at one end and partially filled with fulminate of mercury, which is ignited by a fuse. The ordinary blasting cap (Pl. 55, Fig. 1), or detonator, is intended for use with a fuse, and is designated as single, double, or triple force, according to the amount of fulminate of mercury used. In military operations it is better to use the triple-force caps, as their action is sure, even on comparatively low explosives.\*

427.—The fuse generally used in this country to ignite these detonators or caps is that made by Ensign, Bickford & Co., Simsbury, Conn., the grade known as "double-taped" being the best for general work when the fuse is not exposed to prolonged immersion in water or damp ground. When it is necessary to use fuse for submarine explosives, the water-proof fuse should be used. The rate of burning of the fuse should be found by experiment before using. This is done by taking several pieces, 1 ft. long, and finding the average rate of burning and taking this as the standard. The rate at which this fuse is *intended* to burn is 3 ft. per minute, but it varies somewhat, so that when great nicety is required it should be tested as above.

428.—*To prepare a fuse and detonator for use,* cut the fuse to the

---

\*Single-force caps contain 3 grs., double-force caps 6 grs., and triple-force caps 9 grs. of fulminate of mercury.



length required, leaving a square end; insert this end in the detonator until it rests against the fulminate, taking care not to scratch the fulminate. Then crimp the copper against the fuse so as to hold it firmly: this is done by means of pincers made for the purpose; or, in case these are not available, any pincers or the edge of a dull knife may be used, being careful not to crimp on the portion of the cap containing the fulminate.

*To fire gun-cotton*, insert the detonator in the hole in the priming-block, secure it by tying with wire or twine, and when ready, light the fuse.

*To fire dynamite*, a hole is made for the detonator in the end of the cartridge with a sharp stick or lead pencil and the detonator, with fuse or wire attached, is inserted; the envelope is then tied around the fuse, so that the detonator cannot become detached from the cartridge, care being taken to place the detonator in the cartridge only about  $\frac{3}{4}$  its length, so that the charge may not be ignited by sparks from the fuse before the detonator is exploded.

*To fire gunpowder* (Pl. 57, Fig. 5), the fuse alone is used, being placed so that the end is well centered in the mass of the powder and so secure that it cannot pull out.

429.—The simple electric fuse is so constructed that, upon the passage of a current of electricity through a platinum wire of sufficient strength to heat the wire to redness, some fleecy gun-cotton or other inflammable material, which is wrapped around the wire, is ignited. This fuse may be used to fire a detonator or to ignite gunpowder.

In Pl. 55, Fig. 2, is shown a fuse with a cap, which cannot be removed, containing a detonating compound; hence it can be used with best effect only in compounds that can be detonated. It is called the *commercial* fuse and detonator.

In Pl. 57, Fig. 10, is shown a fuse with a cap containing a det-

onator. The cap can be removed and the fuse used to ignite gunpowder. It is called the *service* fuse and detonator.

Gun-cotton and gunpowder are fired as explained in Par. 428.

*To fire dynamite*, push the detonator in its full length and take two half-hitches, with wire, about the cartridges, so as to hold everything in place. (Pl. 56, Fig. 1.)

430.—The current of electricity for exploding charges is generated by means of a battery consisting of several cells, or by an electrical machine. The means now generally used, and the one that gives surest results, is the magneto machine.\* (Pl. 55, Fig. 3.) The machine is cased in wood, and its dimensions are 13x8x5½ in. It weighs 18 lbs. The machine will fire, under favorable circumstances, 12 fuses. In order that there may be no chance of failure, a greater number than 5 should not be fired in military operations by this machine.

The insulated wire used to make connection between the machine and fuse is best carried on a reel, Fig. 3. The connecting wires between machine and reel are attached by binding posts, as shown in the figure.

*To use the machine*, reel off a sufficient amount of wire, usually about 250 ft., and connect with the wires of the detonator; connect the machine with the reel, being careful not to make this connection until every one is at a safe distance from the place of explosion. The handle on top of the box is now lifted, withdrawing the ratchet bar to its full length, and, when the time arrives to fire the charge, the bar is pushed vertically downward, moving slowly for the first inch or two, then by a rapid but even pressure, till the lower end is stopped at the bottom of the box.

When more than one charge is to be fired, the wires leading

---

\*Lafin & Rand exploder No. 3 and the Siemens magneto electric exploder.

# PLATE 56.

FIG 1



FIG 2.

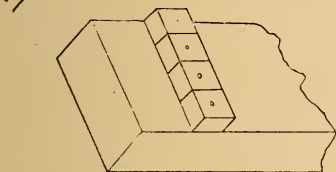


FIG 3.



FIG 4.

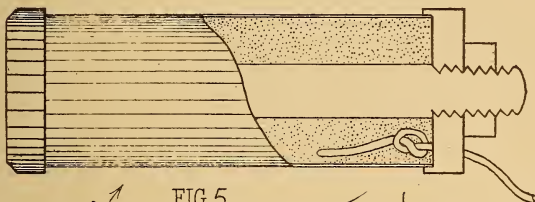


FIG 5.

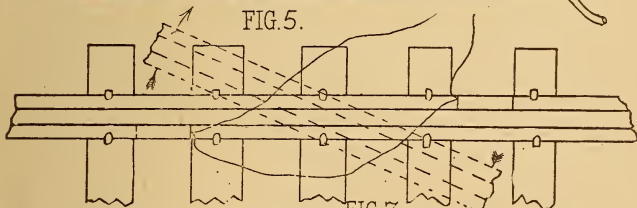


FIG 7

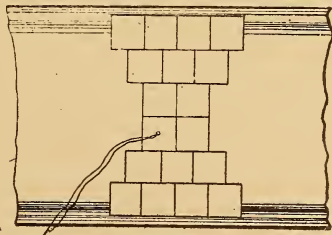


FIG 6



to the several charges should be connected, as shown in Pl. 57, Fig. 6.

431.—In all connection of wires, at least 2 in. of each wire must be cleaned bright and well wrapped around one another, as shown in Pl. 55, Fig. 4; under no circumstances simply hook wires together. After wires are joined, the joint should be insulated by winding rubber tape, or wide rubber bands, around so as to overlap the next previous turn. When water has to be encountered, wrap with rag or a strip of linen and cover with tar; or, use rubber tube as shown: the tube in this case is placed on one of the wires, and, when the joint is made, is pulled over it and tied tightly to the wires on either side of the joint. (Pl. 57, Fig. 9.)

432.—To fell trees, bore a hole at the height desired, insert the charge, and fire, care being taken that the center of the charge is about the center of the tree. If the charge be of a length equal to or less than the diameter of the tree, the hole may be bored directly through; but if greater, then two or three holes, intersecting at the center, must be bored, thus putting the packages of gun-cotton in intimate contact at the center of tree, and requiring but one detonator. For a tree 1 foot in diameter, use 6 ozs. gun-cotton or 1 stick (8 ozs.) dynamite. For other size trees the charges vary as the squares of the diameters. See table.

When time is not available to bore a hole, a necklace may be used. For a tree 1 foot in diameter, use 48 ozs. gun-cotton or 7 sticks dynamite. For other size trees the charges vary as the cubes of the diameter. See table.

Should the charge be placed or hung against the tree, the amount as given by the formula for a necklace must be increased one-fourth.

To make the tree fall in a given direction a rope may be tied to it, hauled taut, and secured to another tree or strong stake.

The above method of felling trees is more expensive than with the ax, and is not to be resorted to except in cases of emergency where time is not available for slower methods. (Pl. 55, Figs. 5, 6, 7 and 8.)

433.—To destroy bridge timbers, place charge in holes if time to bore them; if not and if rectangular, the charge is placed across the whole width of the timber. (Pl. 56, Fig. 2.) The charge for a beam 1 foot wide (breadth) by  $\frac{1}{2}$  foot thick (depth), use 12 ozs. gun-cotton or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  sticks of dynamite. For other sizes the charges vary as the product of the width (or breadth) and square of the thickness (or depth). See table. If the timbers are circular or square, the formula reduces to the same as that for trees where a necklace is used, and the charge should be so placed.

When high explosives are not on hand, the *bridge torpedo* used in the War of the Rebellion may be substituted. It consists of a bolt 8 or 9 in. in length, surrounded by a tin cylinder 2 in. in diameter, which is filled with powder. The ends of the cylinder are closed by iron washers, and a fuse placed in one end. To use this torpedo, a hole  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. in diameter is bored in the timber and the torpedo inserted, having its center at the center of the timber; it is then exploded by means of a fuse. If necessary, two may be placed in holes bored at right angles to each other. (Pl. 56, Fig. 4.)

434.—To destroy a wooden truss bridge, if time is available, the bridge may be burned; to do this, collect brush, etc., and, if possible, place it under one end so as to burn it off and cause the span to drop, but if not possible, build the fire in the center of the span; it will burn through and cause rupture in the center. If time is not available, blow away the main brace of the panel nearest

to an abutment or pier; it is really necessary to blow only one side down, but it is better to be sure and destroy both sides. If the bridge has an arch of wood besides the truss, then destroy the arch on each side. It is better to attack the span over the deepest water, and to select tension members.

435.—Palisades may be cut down with axes or saws, the cuts being made near the bottom; ropes are attached to the tops of the timbers to assist in bringing them down; or the earth at the bottom may be dug out and the palisade pulled over.

Palisades, up to 10 in. in thickness, may be blown down, when the timbers are close together, with 4 lbs. of gun-cotton per running foot.

436.—Stockades may be cut down with axes or saws, as explained for palisades.

They may be blown down with 4 lbs. of gun-cotton per running foot.

If the timbers are squared, the blocks of cotton may be fastened to a thin board and placed against the foot of the stockade; but if of rough logs, tie the blocks together so that they may adapt themselves to the form of the timbers.

When stockades are double, and separated by a distance of one yard—25 lbs. of gun-cotton per running foot or one charge of 80 lbs. may be placed.

Railway-iron stockades are breached by 7 lbs. per running foot.

In all cases with high explosives, distribute the charge so as to cover the length desired to be breached; with gunpowder the charge may be divided in equal parts and placed at a distance apart equal to the thickness of the object to be breached.

437.—Gates may be blown in with 50 lbs. of gun-cotton exploded in one charge. The charge is hung against the center of gate by means of a sharpened pick or on a nail. This charge is



large, but gates will generally be strengthened in some manner on the inside. (Pl. 57, Fig. 4.) The gates of Pekin were opened by a couple of shots from 3.2-inch field guns directed at the locks.

438.—**Houses** may be blown down or shattered by placing charges in the center of the floor and closing all outlets, such as doors, windows, etc. Charge according to the size, 20 lbs. being sufficient for small houses.

439.—**Walls.** The charge should be placed against the bottom, close to the wall, and, if possible, should be tamped. If time permits, a channel may be cut in the wall at the seat of the charge. The charge untamped for brick walls up to 2 feet thick, use 2 lbs. gun-cotton per lineal foot for a distance not less than the height of wall to be brought down. For walls over 2 feet thick, see table. When tamped with earth equal to the thickness of the wall, half the above charge may be used. (Pl. 57, Fig. 2.)

440.—To destroy masonry bridge piers, use about twice the size charges as for brick walls of same dimensions. In order to avoid using so much gun-cotton, it is better to place small charges in chambers excavated as deep as possible in the masonry, and explode all simultaneously; calculate charges as for walls.

441.—**A masonry bridge arch** may be destroyed by attacking the haunches or the crown. The haunches are the best points of attack, two trenches being dug across the width of the roadway down to the back of the arch. If this is not possible, attack the crown. A single trench across the width of the roadway may be used, but it is better to use two, each placed from the crown a distance equal to one-half the width to be breached. The charge untamped for an arch 10 feet wide and 1 foot thick, use 7.5 lbs. gun-cotton. For other arches the charges vary as the width and square of the thickness. See table. When the

charge is tamped with a depth of earth equal to the thickness of the arch, one-half the amount given by the formula is used. (Pl. 57, Fig. 3.)

442.—**Tunnels**, if through soft earth or sand and lined with masonry, may be destroyed by placing charges back of the masonry at the spring of the arch. If possible, the charge should be placed in a chamber excavated behind the arch and well tamped. Tunnels should be blown in at several places, so as to render it impossible to repair them in a short time. Charges as for bridge arches. (Pl. 57, Fig. 8.) Tunnels blasted through solid rock can scarcely be damaged to any great extent in hasty operations. To do so would require a great amount of time, labor, and explosive.

443.—**To cut steel rails**, use one block of gun-cotton, weight 8 ozs., tie the block against the web of the rail with wire or twine, and, if possible, tamp well with earth, and explode. (Pl. 56, Fig. 3.)

To blow a piece of some length out of a rail, arrange two charges of 8 ozs. as shown in Fig. 5, placing one on each side of the rail at a distance apart of 5 or 6 ft.; these should be exploded by use of a magneto machine, so that the action may be simultaneous in both charges; the section will be blown out and turned on its center, making a large opening.

444.—**Switch points** may be destroyed by lodging 8 ozs. of gun-cotton between the outer rail and the pivot end of the switch point, being careful to tamp as completely as possible. ("A," Pl. 51, Fig. 11.) In the case of frogs, 8 ozs. placed in the angle of the frog will destroy the point and render it useless. ("A," Pl. 52, Fig. 1.)

A great length of railway may be disabled at a very rapid rate by making use of hand-cars loaded with gun-cotton, prepared lengths of fuse inserted into detonators, torches, and

copper wire for binding the gun-cotton to the rail. One non-commissioned officer and seven men will be necessary; two run the hand-car; two sit on the hand-car and fix the detonators to the gun-cotton, prepare binding wire and hand out the charges; two men receive the charges and bind them to the rails; two follow at about 150 yards in rear and fire the charges as they pass.

445.—To cut wrought-iron plates 1 foot wide by 1 inch thick, use 1.5 lbs. gun-cotton. For other sizes the charges vary as the width and square of the thickness. See table. The charge should be placed entirely across the plate to be cut.

446.—To cut an iron bridge beam or girder (Pl. 56, Figs. 6 and 7), calculate the charge for each separate cross-section to be cut, using the method in par. 445, and add the results; the sum will be the charge required. The charge is most conveniently placed on the side of the beam, reaching entirely across and bound on with wire, the primer being in the center of the charge. If possible, a board should be tied over the charge and earth tamped around it. When time is not available for placing the charge as above described, it may be laid on top of the beam or on the flange.

447.—Girder bridges not longer than 20 ft. may be overturned by levers and thrown off the abutments. When this cannot be done, the gun-cotton charge may be calculated and placed as described for iron girders.

448.—In iron truss bridges the most favorable place for the charge is at the center of the span on the lower chord. When the bridge is of the variety known as a deck bridge, the charge should be placed on the top member. When the lower or tension member is composed of eye-bars, the charge should be placed between alternate pairs of eye-bars as near to the coupling-pin as possible. The charge may be calculated as in par. 446. (Pl. 57, Fig. 1.)

449.—When bridges are supported by iron or wood piers, it is sometimes possible to destroy the piers, and thus bring down the entire structure. In attacking a pier, it is best to blow out the supports on both sides, as this will bring down all of the bridge resting on the pier.

450.—In destroying suspension bridges, blow down the towers below the saddles, excavate and blow out one of the anchorages, or cut the cable with gun-cotton. The charge for bridge cables, is about 20 lbs. gun-cotton for one 6 inches in diameter, and varies with the cube of the diameter. See table. The charge must be carefully placed, so as to be in close contact with the cable. If the cables are made of plates, the plates may be cut with gun-cotton, as in the case of eye-bars cited above.

451.—Field and siege guns may be disabled by detonating 1½ pounds of gun-cotton on the outside near the muzzle. For heavier fortress guns, detonate 4 pounds in the bottom of the bore, tamping with sand. The carriages may be destroyed by using gun-cotton.

452.—Approximate Relative Strength of Some of the High Explosives.

Explosive gelatine.....	128.3
Nitro-glycerine.....	120.3
Gun-cotton.....	100.
Dynamite, No 1, 75 per cent Nitro-glycerine..	97.8
Rack-a-rock.....	74.2
Dynamite, 50 per cent.....	72.7

453.—Destruction of Obstacles. Wire entanglements may be destroyed by cutting with wire nippers, or, if they are not at hand, then the ordinary hand-ax or machete will do, taking care to cut against the picket.

# PLATE 57.



FIG. 1.

FIG. 2.

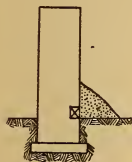


FIG. 3.

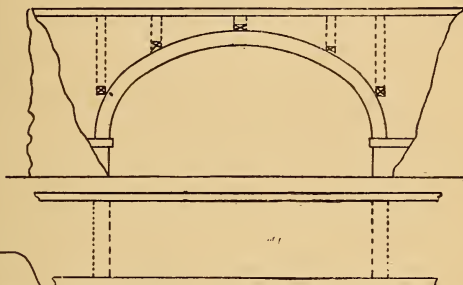


FIG. 4.

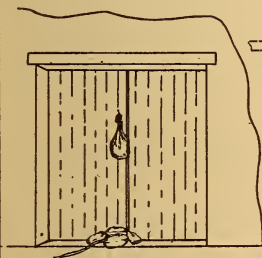


FIG. 5.



FIG. 6.



FIG. 8.

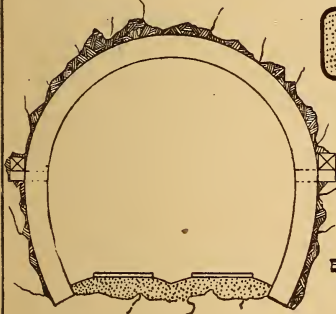


FIG. 10. Service Fuse



- a. copper case
- b. hollow wood cap
- c. wires, .035 INCH
- d. bridge
- e. priming
- f. fulminate of mercury, 10 to 24 grains.
- g. paper, discs held by drop of collodion
- h. plug of beechwood

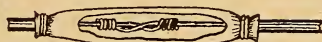


FIG. 9.

**Abatis** is very difficult to destroy and cannot be removed while fire can be brought to bear on the spot. Pry up the pickets with levers and attach ropes to the butts of trees and haul away.

**Small pickets** are cut through with the ax, or, if possible, pulled up.

**Small pits** are filled with earth, brush, or covered by planks, fascines, or bales of hay.

**Automatic torpedoes** are easily destroyed by driving animals up and down the line suspected of containing them.

Obstacles may be destroyed with high explosives deliberately placed at night and detonated just previous to the assault.

454.—The following table gives in a concise form all information necessary for the use of gun-cotton and gunpowder. The table shows approximately the value of the different high explosives as compared with gun-cotton.

NOTE.—Charges are in lbs.; W and T are in feet; t is in inches.

W is width of breach to be made; T or t is thickness of object to be demolished.

Gunpowder is assumed to be roughly tamped with sand-bags. Gun-cotton is untamped. If the gun-cotton is tamped, the charges may be reduced by about one-half.

Charge of gun-cotton must be equal in length to the breach which is to be made, but not so with gunpowder, which may be divided into charges and placed at distances apart equal to twice the thickness of the object to be destroyed.



Object Attacked.	Gunpowder	Gun-cotton	Remarks.
Brick arch. ....	$\frac{3}{2}WT^2$	$\frac{3}{4}WT^2$	The length of breach, W, should not be less than the height of the wall to be brought down.
Brick wall, 2 ft. or less .....		2 lbs. per foot run	
Brick wall over 2 ft. thick. ....		$\frac{1}{2}WT^2$	
Brick piers....		$\frac{2}{3}WT^2$	
Hard wood ( <i>e. g.</i> , oak, elm), in any form, whether stockade, palisade, single timbers, trees, etc.	40 to 100 lbs. for stockade	$3WT^2$  $\frac{3}{8}T^2$	In a concentrated charge, or for trees not over 12 in. diameter, in a necklace.  In auger-hole, when the timber is not perfectly round, T = the smaller axis.
Soft wood .....	Half the charges for hard wood.		
Breastwork of horizontal balks, or earth between sleepers up to 3 ft. 6 in. thick.....	60 to 80 lbs. per 5 ft.	4 lbs. per foot.	
Heavy rail stockade. ....		7 lbs. per foot.	
Fortress gate .....	200 lbs.	50 lbs.	
Iron plate.....		$\frac{3}{2}Wt^2$	In this case t is inches.

Object Attacked	Gunpowder	Gun-Cotton	Remarks
Field or siege guns ..	.....	1½ lbs.	On chase near muzzle.
Heavier guns.....	.....	4 lbs.	In bottom of bore, tamped with water or sand.
First-class iron rail..	.....	10 ozs.	Touching web of rail and near a chair.
First-class steel rail..	.....	8 ozs.	Four rails placed round the charge will be cut simultaneously by it.
Solid wrought-iron plate.....	.....	$\frac{1}{6}Wt^2$	} In which W = width in inches.
Riveted wrought-iron plate .....	.....	$\frac{1}{11}Wt^2$	
Solid steel plate.....	.....	$\frac{1}{4}Wt^2$	} In which t = (thickness) in inches.
Riveted steel plate..	.....	$\frac{1}{8}Wt^2$	
Wire cable, wrought iron.....	.....	$\frac{1}{11}t^3$	} In which t = diameter in inches.
Wire cable, steel....	.....	$\frac{1}{8}t^3$	

## CHAPTER XXI.—Camping Expedients.

455.—There are a few general principles which should be observed in selecting a camp, whether the troops are to be established in bivouac, in tents or in huts. These principles relate to the health and comfort of the troops, the facilities for communication, the convenience of wood and water, and the resources of the locality in provisions and forage.

456.—For an intrenched camp the ground must be selected with particular reference to its adaptability for defense and the camp arranged with that object in view, at the same time observing as many of the other requirements as possible.

457.—Dry and healthy sites, dependent on soil: *Granite, metamorphic and trap rocks*, usually; *clay slates*, but drinking water is scarce; *limestone* generally, but the water is hard, clear and sparkling, though sometimes contaminated; *deep permeable sandstones*, if the air and soil are dry; *deep gravels*, unless lower than surrounding country; *pure sand*, deep and free from organic matter; *well-cultivated soils* generally; *gravelly hillocks*, the very best.

458.—Unhealthy sites, dependent on soil: *Magnesium limestone*; *shallow sandstone* underlaid with clay; *clay and alluvial soils* generally; *rice fields*; *made soils* usually; *newly plowed ground*.

459.—Healthy sites, independent of soil: *The best is on a divide or saddle*, unless too much exposed or without water. *The next best is near the top of a slope*, and the southern side is preferable to the northern; *banks of running rivers* are good, if not marshy.

460.—Unhealthy sites, independent of soil: *Enclosed valleys, ravines, or the mouths of long ravines, ill-drained ground, the neigh-*

borhood of marshes, especially if the wind blows from them. If forced to camp near a marsh, the windward side should be selected, and, if possible, have a hill or a screen of woods or brush between the camp and marsh. Moss generally indicates marshy ground.

461.—Sites affected by surrounding vegetation: Herbage, or closely lying grass, is always healthy, but should be kept cut and all weeds destroyed; heavy brush about a marsh should not be removed. Trees, in cold countries, break the winds; in hot countries they cool the ground and may protect against malarial currents; so should only be removed with judgment.

462.—In selecting camps, wood, water, and grass should be secured, if possible, together with good drainage, but marshy ground should not be occupied even for a night.

Old camp-grounds should never be occupied, if avoidable; instead, go as far as possible to the windward side of them.

The site having been selected, the details of castrametation, or the laying out of camps for the different arms, will be found in Field Service Regulations.

463.—Water is more immediately necessary to life than food.

Each man requires, for drinking only, 4 to 5 pints per day, in bivouac and on the march; for drinking and cooking, 4 to 5 quarts per day, and an equal amount for washing. In camps, 4 to 5 gallons per day for all purposes.

Hospitals require several times as much per man per day.

Horses, mules, and cattle require from 6 to 10 gallons each per day for drinking. It should be soft and clean, if possible. Sheep and hogs require from 2 to 4 quarts each per day.

464.—It is imperative, on going into camp, that the supply be immediately looked after and a guard placed over it. If the supply be

small, special precautions must be taken and an officer put in charge.

465.—Good drinking water should be bright, colorless, odorless, free from sediment, of pleasant and sparkling taste.

*Rain water*, collected from a clean surface, after the atmosphere has been well washed, is the purest in nature. *Springs* whose origins are remote from habitations, streams flowing through uninhabited regions, and large lakes, furnish the next best sources of supply.

466.—*If the supply be from a lake, pond, or stream*, separate places for obtaining water for men and animals must be marked out, and care taken that the margin is not trampled into mud and the water made turbid. Where this is likely to occur when animals are watered direct from the source of supply, a hard bottom should be formed for them to stand on, and a barrier formed to prevent them going out too far.

It is better, when convenient, to arrange rows of sunken half-barrels, or board troughs raised above the ground, into which the water can be drawn. If the supply be limited, it may be necessary to connect the troughs to prevent waste; if not limited, each should be supplied direct from the source and the overflow drained off. Even when drinking from a running stream, the animals below get foul water. To prevent the ground around the troughs becoming muddy, it should be paved and drained along the whole length and for a distance of 10 or 12 ft. back. Where troughs cannot be constructed, trenches lined with puddled clay may be made to answer.

Arrangements should be made so animals may be brought up from one direction and leave in another without confusion or crowding.

467.—*If the supply be from a stream*, the water for drinking

and cooking for the troops is drawn highest up; for the animals to drink, next below; and for washing, bathing, etc., lowest down; while all drainage should enter below where any water is taken.

If the stream be small, it may be necessary to construct a series of small reservoirs by building small dams across. Animals drink better and more rapidly where water is 5 or 6 in. deep.

468.—If unavoidable, water from small ponds and shallow wells should only be used after being boiled half an hour, then aërated and filtered. In fact, the only safe method of treating any water that is not known to be pure is to boil it thoroughly for at least half an hour sterilize or distil it, one of which methods should always be insisted upon.

469.—If the supply be from springs, each should be enlarged and surrounded by a low puddled wall, to keep out surface drainage. They may be lined with casks or barrels charred inside, or gabions, afterwards working in puddled clay between the earth and linings. The overflow may be received into a succession of casks let into the ground close together.

Surface springs should be sought for in hollows, at the foot of hills, where the earth is moist, the grass unusually green, or the thickest mists arise mornings and evenings.

470.—If water is not immediately available, it may be necessary to dig wells. The most expeditious means of doing so is to use *Well Augers*. (Pl. 58, Figs. 1, 2, and 3.)

471.—To dig a well, an auger is attached to a rod suspended from a rope passing over a pulley at the top of a derrick or tripod and thence to a windlass. To the auger rod is secured an arm or arms, by which the auger is turned by hand and so screwed down into the earth. About eight turns fill the auger, which is then lifted, emptied and replaced.



**472.**—*The auger for boring in quicksand* (Fig. 3) is shaped similarly to the ordinary wood-boring auger, but with a hollow shank, so that, when lifted, no suction is produced. When the thread becomes loaded, the auger is drawn up into an enclosing cylinder, removed from well and emptied.

**473.**—**Driven wells.** The driven tube-well consists of a tube about 3 ft. long, perforated with holes, and furnished with a steel point of bulbous form (Fig. 4) and as many other plain iron tubes as may be necessary.

The form of the point serves to clear a passage for the sockets by which the tubes are screwed together.

**474.**—**To drive a well,** a tube is screwed to the point (Fig. 5) and on this a clamp is fastened by two bolts at about 3 ft. from the lower extremity of the point. Next, an iron driving weight, or monkey, is slipped on the tube above the clamp. The tube thus furnished is raised and held vertically in the center of a guide, in which it is retained by a latch. The whole being now arranged in position, ropes are made fast to the monkey and passed over pulleys on the guide, and driving commenced by two men pulling the ropes and allowing the monkey to fall on the clamp. As soon as the clamp reaches the ground, the monkey is raised and held up, the clamp loosened and raised 1.5 or 2 ft., tightened, and the driving continued as before until the top of the tube comes below the hole in the top of the guide head, when the lengthening bar (Fig. 7) is dropped into the top of the well-tube. The lengthening bar consists of a length of the well-tubing with a smaller pipe brazed into one end and projecting about 1 ft., which fits into the well-tube. This bar keeps the tube steady and serves as a guide for the monkey to slide on until the top of the well-tube reaches to within a foot of the ground. The lengthening bar is then removed, another tube is screwed on, and the driving continued until water is reached. A hollow



Fig. 1.

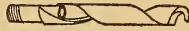


Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.

Fig 8

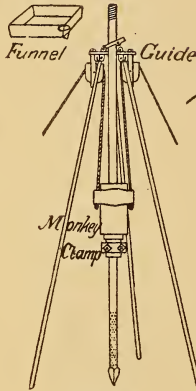


Fig 5.

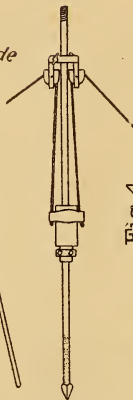


Fig 6.

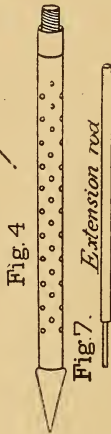


Fig. 4

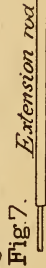


Fig. 7.

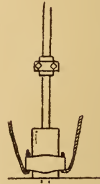


Fig. 9



Fig 11.

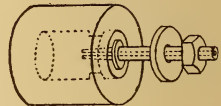


Fig. 12.

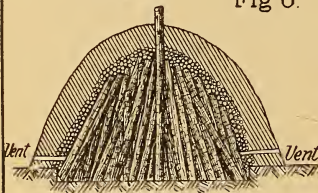


Fig. 10.



Fig. 14.

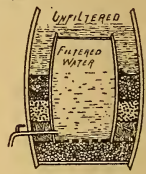


Fig. 15.



Fig. 13.

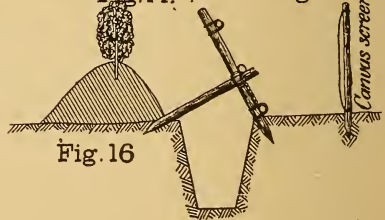
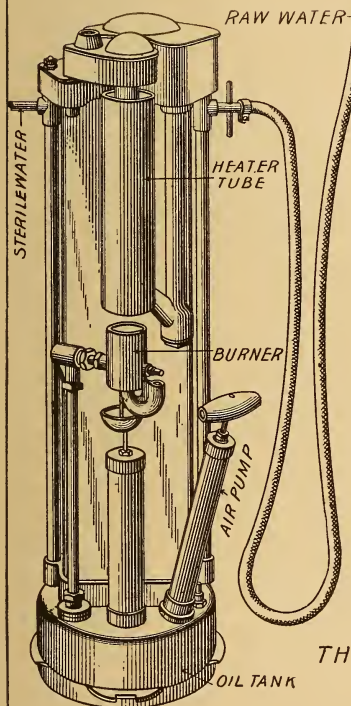


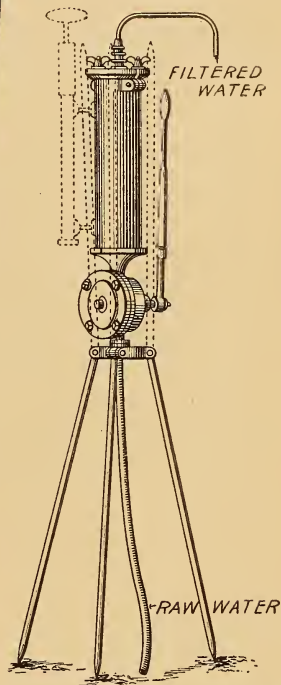
Fig. 16

FIG. 1



THE FORBES  
STERILIZER

FIG. 2



THE BERKEFELD PORTABLE  
\_FILTER\_

MAIGNEN'S SECTION WATER FILTER

FIG 1

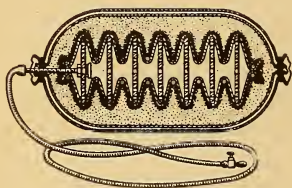


FIG. 2

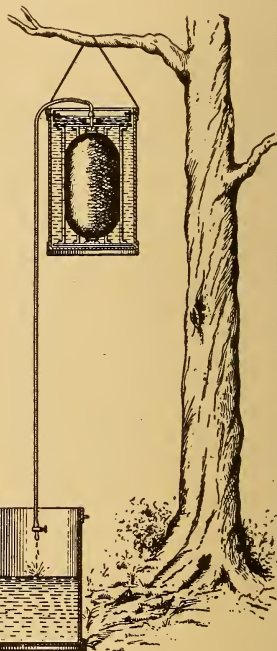


FIG 3

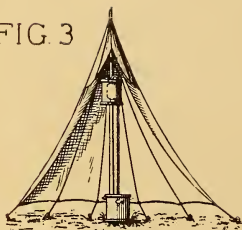
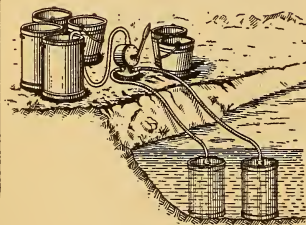


FIG. 4



**PLATE 58 C.**

FIG I

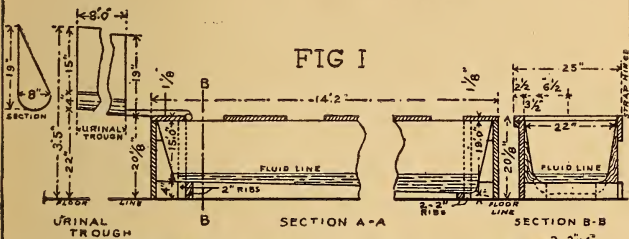


FIG 3

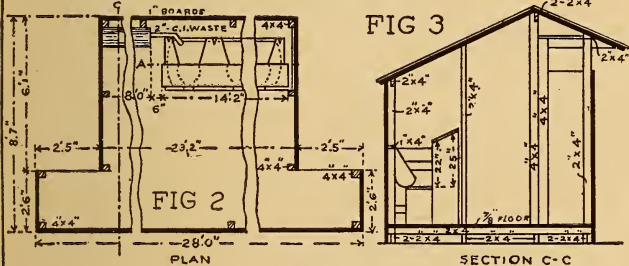
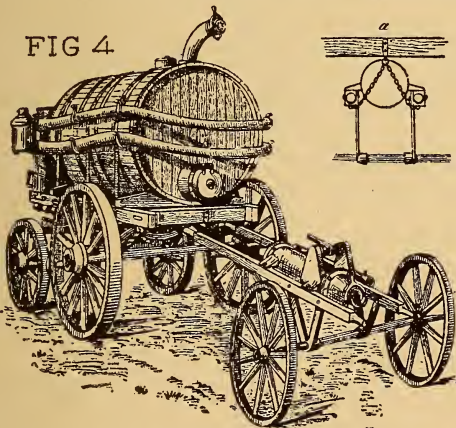


FIG 4



ODORLESS EXCAVATING TANK WAGON  
WITH PUMP

**T.H.S**

*MC CALLS INCINERATOR*

FIG. 1

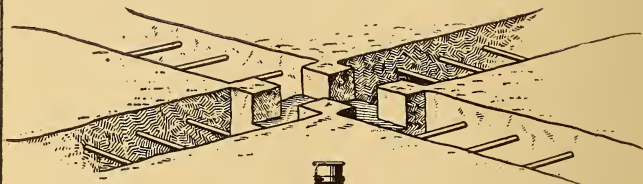


FIG. 2

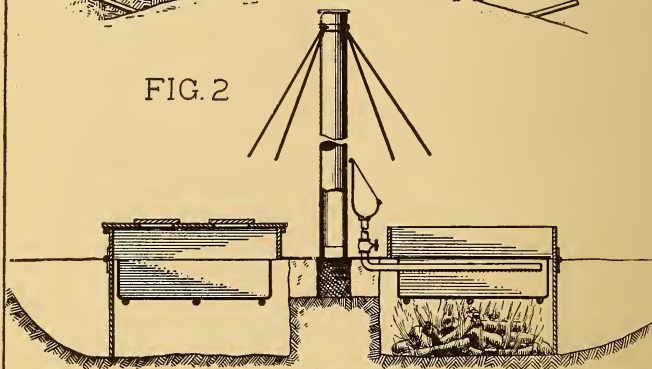


FIG. 3.

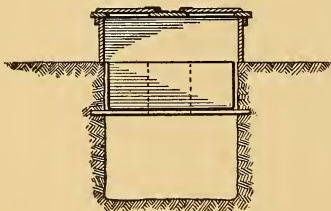
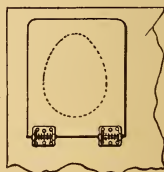


FIG. 4





iron plumb is frequently lowered into the tube to ascertain when water has been reached or whether earth of any kind has got into it.

Accumulations in the tube, of a loose sandy nature, can be pumped up, by screwing a funnel (Fig. 8) on top of the tube, then lowering into it through the funnel a small tube with a pump attached. Water poured into the funnel runs down outside the smaller tube and is pumped up through it, bringing the mud and sand. When water is struck, and stands several feet in the tube, the pump is screwed on to the well-tube.

The well can also be driven without the use of the tripod supports (Fig. 6), care being taken to keep the tube vertical by means of guy-ropes. Such a well can be driven from 10 to 20 ft. per hour. The tubes can be withdrawn without damage by reversing the operations of driving. (Fig. 9.)

475.—The tube-well is not intended for piercing rock, or solid stone formations, but is quite capable of penetrating very hard and compact soils. When striking rock, stone, or deep beds of clay, it is best to pull up the tube and try in another spot, for by going a little distance off water will in many cases be found.

476.—Clarification of water. Water usually contains mineral and organic substances *in solution* and *in suspension*. Substances in solution completely disappear and cannot be entirely filtered out. Substances in suspension do not entirely disappear and may be filtered out.

477.—*Hard water contains one or more substances*, as lime, magnesia, iron and others, *in solution*, which are liable to produce intestinal troubles to persons unaccustomed to them. Cooking vegetables in it is very difficult. Washing with it requires a great deal of soap.

The hardness of water may be partially removed by boiling for half an hour or so, or by adding a small quantity of wash-

ing soda, or by adding a couple of ounces of quicklime to 100 gallons.

478.—*Substances in suspension* may be largely removed by *precipitation* and *filtration*.

479.—*Precipitation* is allowing such matter as will to settle through its greater specific gravity, or by inducing it to do so through some harmless chemical or mechanical action. For which purpose may be used about 6 grains of crystallized alum to the gallon, or tannin in small quantities, and letting stand several hours before using; bruised cactus leaves, also tea leaves that have been used, act similarly; citric acid, 1 oz. to 16 gal., or borax and alum, 1-3 oz. each, or 1 to 2 tablespoonfuls of ground mustard to a barrel, improves water.

480.—*Filtration* is mechanically arresting and attracting suspended matter, and removing dissolved matter in the water. Filtering materials act only for a short period and should be frequently cleaned.

481.—*Materials which may be used* are sponge, wool, and like articles for straining, but must be constantly removed and cleaned. Clean sand, gravel, and porous stone remove suspended matter, but have little or no effect on dissolved organic matter. *Iron sponge*, a compound of sawdust and iron oxide heated in a furnace, and *Carferal*, a composition of charcoal, iron, and clay, are efficient for removing mineral matter. Bone-black or animal charcoal, and wood charcoal, when freshly burned, absorb mineral matter for a couple of weeks, but their chief action is on organic matter.

482.—*Charcoal* may be made by digging in the ground a circular pit, some 6 in. deep by 4 or 5 ft. across, then placing a large pole or bundle of brushwood vertically in the center. Around this the wood to be burned is piled, forming a kind of cone. The pile is then covered with brush, and on this a layer of 4 or 5 in. of

earth. (Fig. 10.) The center pole is then removed and a fire lighted in its place, receiving air from vents left at the bottom for that purpose. The fire proceeds from the center outwards, and, if burning properly, the smoke is thick and white. If it does not spread to every part, new vents must be made. If the smoke becomes thin and a blue flame appears, it is burning too fast, and vents must be stopped up or more earth thrown on. When the smoke ceases to escape, the vents and chimney are closed and the pile allowed to stand for a couple of days until it cools.

From 20 to 25 per cent of charcoal is thus obtained.

**483.—A convenient portable filter** (Fig. 11) is made by taking a small cylinder of compressed carbon and inserting it in a rubber tube in such a manner that the carbon end may be immersed in the water, then applying the mouth to a mouth-piece at the other end of the tube, and drawing the water through.

**484.—The Success Filter** (Fig. 12) consists of a cylindrical porous stone 4 in. long by 4 in. in diameter with a hole bored in one end. In this is fitted a rubber gasket, through which passes an iron tube that is fastened into the bottom of a barrel, jar, or bucket. The water filters through the stone into the hole inside and passes out through the tube into a receiving vessel below. (Fig. 13.)

By fastening the iron tube into the bottom of a large empty tomato or peach can, in which the stone is placed on the tube and wedged fast, then fastening a rubber tube 2 or 3 ft. long on the iron tube outside of the can, a syphon filter is obtained. The action is set up by exhausting the air from the stone, after the can and stone are immersed in water, by sucking on the end of the rubber tube until the water is started.

**The Maignen Portable Filter** (Pl. 58B, Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4).—This filter consists of a filtering organ composed of an inner asbestos cloth, a layer of fine carbo-calcis, a layer of granular carbo-

calcis, an outer asbestos cloth, with a protective asbestos cloth covering. This filter is sometimes modified by using a mixture of alum, iron, and charcoal, under the name of carfural, as the essential filtering material. Filtration is ordinarily performed by siphonage, but the water may be forced through with a pump. The various modes for using this filter for different purposes are indicated in the drawings.

**The Berkfeld Portable Filter.**—This filter is shown on Pl. 58A, Fig. 2. It is essentially a bougie filter, so arranged that it is transportable. The illustration shows the filter mounted on a tripod. The tripod folds up, as indicated by the dotted lines. The filter may also be provided with a pump, as shown. This filter weighs approximately 11 lbs. A large size filter, containing a battery of nine cylinders mounted on a wooden frame, is also used for field purposes. This will supply approximately  $4\frac{1}{2}$  gallons of filtered water per minute.

**485.—A simple water filter** may be made by stuffing a piece of sponge in a hole in the bottom of a cask, flower pot, or other vessel (Fig. 14), then placing above this a layer of coarse sand, then a layer of pounded charcoal 3 or 4 in. thick, then another layer of coarse sand and on this a layer of coarse gravel. The layers should be thick as possible, and tightly compressed, and washed thoroughly clean before being used. The different layers may be prevented from mixing by perforated boards, or otherwise. Another form may be made as shown in Fig. 15.

**485a.—The Forbes Sterilizer** (Pl. 58A, Fig. 1) is compact in form, as indicated in the drawings, easily transportable, and gives better satisfaction than any other portable sterilizer hitherto manufactured for field use. The action of this sterilizer depends upon the following:

First: The maintenance of the level of raw water supply in a vessel controlled by a float valve.

Second: The application of heat to a part of this water, causing ebullition, thus inducing the water to rise slightly and overflow; the overflow water being held in a separate portion of the apparatus.

Third: The cooling of the water thus sterilized by the adjacent raw water; the raw and sterile water being separated by diaphragms.

This apparatus, by means of the oil burner, heats the water in the heating tube to the boiling point. The raw water enters through the hose connection and fills the raw water compartment. This raw water passes to the sterile water compartment through the heater tube by the principle of overflow above stated. The separation of the raw and sterile water is made by diaphragms, and the arrangement is such that no water can pass to the sterile compartment without going through the heater tube. The temperature of the sterile water will be about 15 degrees Fahrenheit greater than that of the raw water.

The capacity of this sterilizer is about 20 gallons per hour. The burner consumes about 1 quart of mineral oil in five hours, thus making the fuel consumption 1 quart of mineral oil to 100 gallons of water. This sterilizer is also provided with a wood-burning attachment. Two containers and a stand, called the barrel accessory, accompany this sterilizer. The raw water container is placed on the stand, the sterilized water container on the ground.

A sterilizer, of about five times the capacity of the one above described, may be permanently mounted on wheels, thus being transported as a complete sterilizing apparatus. As the small sterilizers may be assembled in batteries, and may be attached to the same source of supply and to the same sterile water receptacle, a transportable sterilizer mounted on wheels is of no great gain. Furthermore, the small sterilizers may be sent out

with different detachments of a command, which is a distinct advantage.

It is advantageous, and sometimes necessary, to filter very muddy water before sterilization to avoid fouling the sterilizer. It is also advantageous, but not necessary, to filter the water after sterilization. This removes the dead matter.

A portable distilling apparatus is impracticable for troops in the field, on account of transportation, fuel, and cooling water for condensation purposes.

486.—Casks, or barrels, charred on the inside (and occasionally cleaned, brushed, and recharred), improve water.

487.—*Latrines.* Arriving on the site of a camp, one of the first duties is to designate the places to attend to the calls of nature, and there dig latrines. Urinals should be placed nearer the camp and of easy access.

The only exception to digging latrines is when the command is very small, is certain to march the next day, and no other troops are to follow.

488.—*Latrines* and urinals should be so placed as not to be in the course of the prevailing winds to the camp, and must be so situated that they cannot pollute the water, either directly or by soakage, and should be on opposite sides of camp from kitchens as a precaution against flies going from latrines to kitchens.

489.—A small, shallow trench will suffice for a single night, and should invariably be filled in the morning before marching.

For longer periods, a trench 2 or 3 ft. wide at top, from 2 to 10 ft. deep, and 12 to 15 ft. long for every 100 men, should be dug, throwing the earth to the rear, from which a layer of a few inches should be thrown into the trench every day, or oftener if necessary. Lime or charcoal may also be used to deodorize the soil, or better still, if possible, to thoroughly burn out the trenches every day by filling in inflammable material, soaking with oil, and setting on fire.



It is better to increase the number of trenches than to make any one trench too long.

Shallow latrines should be discarded when filled within a foot of the surface, and completely filled in with earth; deep ones when within 3 or 4 ft. of the surface.

All latrines should be filled in and marked before marching.

490.—In temporary camps, latrines may be provided with seats of a pole and a back, and be screened by bushes, canvas, or other means. (Fig. 16.)

490a.—A latrine for a semi-permanent camp (Pl. 58C, Figs. 1, 2, and 3) may be provided by using a galvanized iron trough about 14 feet long and 22 inches wide at top, 15 inches deep at upper end and 18 inches deep at lower end, the trough to be parabolic in cross-section. The trough is fitted in a wooden frame and provided with a seat-board with seven openings. A urinal trough to accompany the latrine may be made of galvanized iron, 8 feet long, 8 inches wide, and 4 inches deep. The urinal trough should be set about 30 inches above the ground and held in place by a wooden frame. This is to be connected to the latrine trough as shown in the figure. The urinal trough may, however, be set at right angles to the latrine trough. The wall of the urinal trough is made 18 inches high on its rear side as shown in section. The latrine and urinal troughs may be set directly on the ground or on a wooden floor.

For use, the latrine trough is filled with water to a depth of about 2 inches at its upper end; to this is added lime in sufficient quantity to make a strong solution (from 1-10 to 1-6 of a barrel). This arrangement will accommodate about 100 men.

The sewage is removed by the use of an odorless excavating tank wagon and pump. (Pl. 58C, Fig. 4.) The pump is operated by hand power.

This arrangement of latrine and urinal troughs may be en-

closed in a temporary building, as shown in Pl. 58C, Figs. 1, 2, 3. The floor may be omitted. The arrangement may be screened from observation by the use of brushwood, boards, or by heavy roofing paper tacked to posts set in the ground and capped. The screen should be about 6 feet high. Shelter may be obtained by the use of boards, roofing paper, or canvas (paulins or wagon covers).

Four latrine and four urinal troughs may be assembled in one enclosure, thus accommodating 400 men. Latrine troughs should be set back to back, in the center of the enclosure, in groups of two. The urinal troughs should be set perpendicular to the line of latrine troughs at each end. Such an arrangement permits a minimum amount of covering screening material.

**490b.**—For the destruction of sewage an incinerating device may be used. (Pl. 58D, Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4.) This consists of a removable wooden seat set over a trench, the trench to be provided, as shown, with iron cross-bars; also with iron pans as receptacles for excreta. As many trenches are dug as are necessary—usually three or four—coming together at a common point. A stack should be provided at this common point and be held in place by means of wire guys. When the pans in the trench are filled, the wooden seat is removed, the pans are partially covered, and the matter burned. A galvanized iron latrine trough can be provided, as indicated. Two or more openings are provided in each seat for field use. One opening may be considered as sufficient for 15 men. Cover may be provided by the use of boards, roofing paper, or paulins, but great care must be exercised to avoid burning, on account of the stack.

**491.**—**Kitchens.** On going into camp, kitchens should be promptly established, and in the same relative positions as if the camp were going to last a month or more. A pit should be dug near by for strictly liquid refuse, while solid matter should be

placed in a box or barrel for the police party to remove and burn.

An improvised incinerator, large enough for a brigade, may be constructed by digging a circular pit 3 feet deep and 15 feet in diameter. The bottom is covered with loose stones to a depth of 14 to 16 inches. On this bottom is built a circumferential wall to a height of one foot above the original ground level, and the excavated earth is packed against it from the outside, so as to provide a sloping approach and thereby prevent surface water from entering the pit. A pyramid of large stones 4 or 5 feet high is built in the center of the pit to provide a central draft and steady fire. The bottom stones receive the liquid garbage without affecting the fire, and upon becoming heated evaporate the liquid. A fire is built of wood in this incinerator and the garbage, solid and liquid; dumped thereon.

492.—*When fuel is plentiful*, a trench of sufficient length and about 1 ft. deep may be dug to contain the fire, over which the kettles are hung from supports. (Pl. 59, Fig. 1.)

*If fuel is scarce*, then dig a trench as above in the direction of the wind, but a little narrower than the diameter of the kettles to be used. Place the kettles over the trench and fill in between with stones, clay, etc., forming a kind of flue. The draft may be increased by building a chimney of sods, stones, etc., on the leeward end and enlarging the windward end. (Fig. 2.)

If the camp is to be for a long time and the direction of the wind liable to vary, a number of such trenches may be dug radiating from a common point, over which point a chimney is constructed. Then, whatever the direction of the wind, the trench opening in that direction can be used, the others being closed.

The trenches should have a slight fall from the chimney back for drainage, and a means for the water to escape. If the ket-

FIG. 1

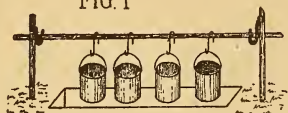


FIG. 2. *Plan.*

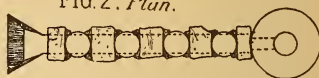


FIG. 4

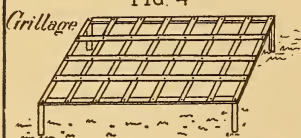


FIG. 7.

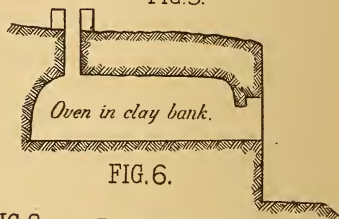


FIG. 6.

FIG. 9.



FIG. 10.



FIG. 11

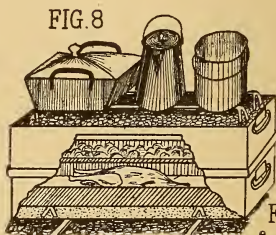


FIG. 8

FIG. 14.

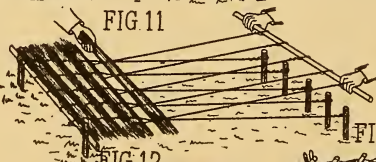


FIG. 12.



FIG. 15.



FIG. 13.

tles are small or of various sizes, rests of stones, scraps of iron, etc., may be placed across the trench.

A square hole may be dug for the fire with trenches for draught at the corners, the kettles being placed on rests over the fire. (Fig. 3.)

493.—A *grillage* or *kind of grate* about 1 ft. high, made of gas-pipe or bar-iron, is sometimes used to set over the fire, and on this are placed the kettles. (Fig. 4.) These are sometimes made with movable joints, so as to be closed for transportation.

494.—If a covered kitchen is desired, either a trench similar to Fig. 2 can be dug, or one above ground can be built with stones and sods and a tent placed over it, or a cover constructed.

495.—To bake bread, when none of the portable ovens of the Commissary Department is carried, improvised ovens must be constructed. The simplest method is to take a barrel with one head out (one with iron hoops best), lay it on its side in a hollow in the ground and then plaster over with wet clay 6 to 8 in. thick, then with a layer of dry earth equally thick, leaving an opening of 3 or 4 in. at the top of the closed end for a flue. The staves are then burned out by a hot fire, which also bakes the clay covering, forming an arched oven. To bake, after heating, the front and flues are closed. Or a pit may be dug from 6 to 12 in. deep and 4 by 5 ft. for the hearth, over this form an arch with a hurdle or any other material available (Fig. 7), with a chimney at one end and a door at the other. Then plaster and cover the arch as in the barrel oven and bake the clay covering.

496.—An oven may be excavated in a clay bank (Fig. 6) and used at once.

497.—The Buzzacott Army Field Oven\* (Fig. 8), which is an article of issue, is a complete camp cooking outfit, consisting of oven, baking and frying pans, etc. All are securely packed together and can be conveniently carried in the feed-box of an army wagon or on a pack animal. To use it, a bed of live coals is first obtained, then the oven after being heated is placed on rests over a bed of coals, and a layer of sand sprinkled evenly over the bottom of the oven to prevent burning out. In this is placed the pans of prepared food on suitable rests and the whole covered with a hood. On the hood is scattered a layer of live coals and burning brands. Broiling, frying, coffee-making, etc., may be done on top of the oven, by using the remaining pans, rests, etc., at the same time that the interior is used for baking.

498.—*Drainage.* The camp being located, a system of surface drainage should be carefully traced and constructed. As soon as a tent is pitched it should be surrounded by a shallow ditch outside, emptying into a company ditch. The proper method of doing this is to have the inner edge of the ditch come just inside of the skirt wall of the tent to catch the water running down the side of the tent and to drain the interior.

---

\*The present issue of these ovens is made of sheet steel in shape exactly like an ordinary kitchen stove, with fire-box and oven, and requiring stovepipe. This Field Range, so called, has holes on top over which to set kettles, etc.

The Fireless Cooker is being perfected to issue to troops. This consists of kettles and boilers in which articles to be cooked are brought to the proper temperature for cooking, and are then put in a receptacle for them in which they are surrounded for several hours by a non-conductor of heat, thus retaining that to which they have been raised, and the cooking proceeds without further care or attention. Those so far tested have proved a great success and great savers of labor and fuel. Breakfast may be prepared the evening before and put in the cookers and come out cooked and hot the next morning. Likewise, in the morning the food for supper may be heated, put in cookers, packed in wagons and at the end of the day's march be ready to serve hot to the tired troops.



The picket should be inside of the ditch. (Fig. 9.) To bank earth up against the tent soon rots the bottom of the wall.

**499.—Beds.** The ground being generally too damp to lie upon directly, all should sleep upon some dry material, as straw, leaves, or preferably a low platform constructed of small branches and poles, if available. (Fig. 10.)

If required to sleep upon the ground, one will sleep more comfortably if he scrapes out a small hollow for his hips. Straw, hay, etc., for sleeping upon may be made into mats with the Malay Hitch as in Fig. 11.

**500.—Windbreaks.** When troops bivouac, some protection from wind may be obtained by building up to the windward a pile of earth, sods, etc. Where trees are available, by resting a pole on two forked sticks, 4 or 5 ft. high, against which branches, thick end up, are piled at an angle of 45° on the windward side. (Fig. 12.) Hurdles similarly placed, supported and covered (Fig. 13), canvas or blankets secured as in Fig. 14, straw or hay clamped between poles as in Fig. 15, may be used.

By throwing up either a half or whole circle of earth 18 ft. in diameter, from a ditch on the outside, some protection may be obtained. On the bank so formed additional windbreaks may be placed or a covering extended over it all may be made. (Pl. 60, Figs. 1 and 2.)

**501.—**In cases of prolonged occupation, if tents are not available, the troops should build shelter of some kind.

**Huts** may be built of timber, logs, brushwood, adobe, etc., in connection with straw, bark, sods and similar materials.

All huts should, if possible, have their floors raised above the ground to allow free circulation of air underneath. (Fig. 3.) Only in very dry soil and when not to be occupied long is it allowable to sink them, if avoidable. Space between huts in the same row

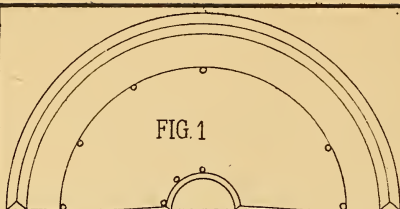


FIG. 1

*Plan*



FIG. 2.

*Section*



FIG. 4.



FIG. 5.



FIG. 3.



*Unhealthy*

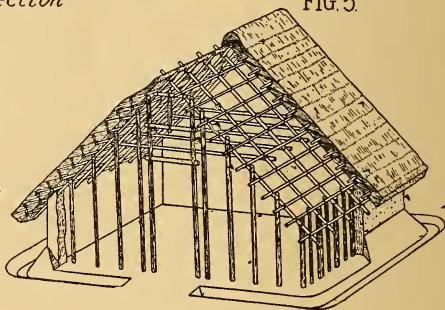


FIG. 6

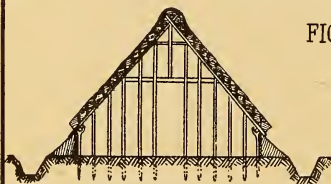


FIG. 7



FIG. 8.

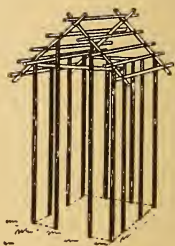


FIG. 9.

should equal the height of walls, and passage in rear equal the height of ridge. Hut sites should be well pounded.

Huts are ordinarily constructed to contain a small number of men, but the sizes and details of construction will depend greatly upon the site and materials available.

A very fair minimum allowance per man of bed space is about 2.5 ft. x 7 ft. with a passage at foot from 2 to 4 ft.

Thus, the plan for 8 men may be taken at 10 ft. x 18 ft., arranged as in Fig. 4. For 12 men, 15 ft. x 18 ft. For 16 men, 20 ft. x 18 ft. For 20 men, 25 ft. x 18 ft.

For calculating the accommodation at the above rates, allow 1 man per pace of length for a single row of beds and 2 men per pace of length for a double row of beds.

502.—Major Smart, Medical Department, recommends as best a modification of the Army of the Potomac hut, of rectangular plan (Fig. 5), 7 ft. x 13 ft., height to eaves 6 ft., to ridge 10 ft.; door in middle of one long side, chimney opposite door on outside of wall; on each side of doorway a double bunk. This hut to accommodate 4 men.

If logs are used, the ends are trimmed with an ax where they lap at the corners, so they will lie one upon the other throughout their length.

503.—If made of small timber, some style, as in Fig. 6, with thatched roof, might be used.

If, for any reason, it is not desirable to build huts as above, forms may be used as shown in Fig. 7, or hurdles, as in Fig. 8.

504.—Sentry boxes may be made as in Fig. 9, the side covering consisting of watling described in Chap. IX. and the roof thatched.

**505.**—An excellent form of bamboo hut with grass roof, as shown in cut, has been successfully used in the Philippines. The corner posts were made double for additional strength, the floor being of bamboo strips lashed firmly to bamboo floor beams. Wooden pins and rattan lashings were used throughout. The hut shown is 16 ft. square, in the clear, and furnished comfortable and sanitary sleeping-room for eight men on gold medal cots.

**505a.**—Bathing should be encouraged. Streams, ponds, lakes, etc., should be made use of, where bottoms and banks are satisfactory. In case of streams, care should be taken in regard to the current.

In camp, the canteen, an ordinary wash-pan, water-bucket, or rubber blanket, placed in a depression in the ground, may be the only means at hand.

**Bath Enclosure.**—An enclosure may be provided by the use of boards, brushwood, roofing paper, or canvas, thus making a screen from observation. If practicable, some sort of floor should be improvised. There should be a clear space between the floor and the screen. Cover may be provided by the use of boards, roofing paper, or canvas. It is very desirable to have at least some portion of the cover removable, so as to permit the sunlight to dry the enclosure.

A floor 32 feet long and 12 feet wide will accommodate 16 shower baths arranged to be taken from a central pipe on each side alternately. Where the supply of water can be conveyed to troops by means of a pipe-line, this is the most satisfactory method. Buckets may, however, be the only means available.



# APPENDIX.

## Metric Equivalents.

### Linear Measure.

1 centimeter = 0.3937 inch.		1 inch = 2.54 centimeters.
1 decimeter = 3.937 inch = 0.328 feet.	}	1 foot = 3.048 decimeters.
1 meter = 39.37 inch = 1.0936 yards.	}	1 yard = 0.9144 meter.
1 dekameter = 1.9884 rods.		1 rod = 0.5029 dekameter.
1 kilometer = 0.62137 mile.		1 mile = 1.6093 kilometers.

### Square Measure.

1 sq. centimeter = 0.1550 sq. inch.	}	1 sq. inch = 6.452 sq. centi- meters.
1 sq. decimeter = 0.1076 sq. foot.	}	1 sq. foot = 9.2903 sq. deci- meters.
1 sq. meter = 1.196 sq. yards.		1 sq. yard = 0.8361 sq. meter.
1 are = 3.954 sq. rods.		1 sq. rod = 0.2529 are.
1 hektare = 2.47 acres.		1 acre = 0.4047 hektare.
1 sq. kilometer = 0.386 sq. mile.	}	1 sq. mile = 2.59 sq. kilo- meters.

### Measure of Volume.

1 cubic centimeter = 0.061 cubic inch.	}	1 cubic inch = 16.39 cu. centi- meters.
1 cubic decimeter = 0.0353 cubic foot.	}	1 cubic foot = 28.317 cu. deci- meters.
1 cu. meter = { 1.308 cu. yds.		1 cu. yard = 0.7646 cu. meter.
1 ster = { 0.2759 cord.	}	1 cord = 3.624 sters.
1 liter = { 0.908 qt. dry.		1 quart dry = 1.101 liters.
1 liter = { 1.0567 qts. liq.		1 quart liq. = 0.9463 liter.
1 dekaliter = { 2.6417 gals.		1 gal. = 0.3785 dekaliter.
1 dekaliter = { .135 peck.		1 peck = 0.881 dekaliter.
1 hektoliter = 2.8375 bushels.		1 bushel = 0.3524 hektoliter.

### Weights.

1 gram = 0.03527 ounce.		1 ounce = 28.35 grams.
1 kilogram = 2.2046 pounds.		1 pound = 0.4536 kilogram.
1 metric ton = 1.1023 English tons.	}	1 English ton = 0.9072 metric ton.

### Approximate Metric Equivalents.

1 decimeter = 4 inches.		1 liter = 1.06 qts. liquid.
1 meter = 1.1 yards.	}	1 liter = 0.9 qt. dry.
1 kilometer = $\frac{5}{8}$ of mile.		1 hektoliter = $2\frac{1}{2}$ bushels.
1 hektare = $2\frac{1}{2}$ acres.		1 kilogram = 2 1-5 lbs.
1 ster, or cu. meter = $\frac{1}{4}$ of a cord.		1 metric ton = 2,200 lbs.



# INDEX.

	<i>Par.</i>		<i>Par.</i>
ABATIS, consists of, how made.....	50	BAKRICADE, use and construction of.....	61
in shallow ditch, of small branches, in front of glacis.....	5	for doors of buildings.....	195
how destroyed.....	41	BATHING.....	505a
ADVANCED POST, rear of...	204	BATTERIES, telegraph, how carried.....	418
ANCHORS, number of, scarcity of.....	343	BAY, length of, how found...	317
substitutes for.....	344	BEDS, camp.....	499
use of.....	342	BERM, definition of, etc.....	65, 99
weights of, names of parts of.....	341	advantages and disadvantages of.....	78
ANGLE, equal to a given angle, method of laying out.....	22	BINDING, fascines.....	117
right, method of laying out.....	18	BISECTING an angle, method of.....	20
re-entrant, salient, shoulder.....	82	BLOCKS, description of, etc., running.....	228
APPROACHES, in siege operations constructed by infantry.....	154	BLOCKHOUSE, use and construction of.....	144
AREA, of rectangle, of trapezoid, of triangle, method of finding.....	25	Spanish.....	145a
ARTILLERY, in defense of village, where placed...	215	in isolated places.....	145
in woods.....	179	BOAT, buoyancy of, how found.....	316
projectiles.....	9	BOX or barrel to sling.....	223
to be placed outside of works.....	87, 151	pontoon, construction of...	323
AX. use of.....	44	BRACKETS, telegraph.....	410
BALKS, hay, etc., defined...	284-285	BREAKING loads of ropes...	218
BALLAST, for R. R., object of.....	377	BREAKS in telegraph lines..	419
BAMBOO POLES.....	340a	BRIDGE, anchored to hawser.....	343
BANK, GUN, definition of, relative advantages of, and embrasures.....	70	area of cross-section of log.....	255
dimensions of, where placed.....	102	beams of iron, how destroyed.....	446
space required for.....	100	connection with shore, how made.....	350
BARREL, buoyancy of, how determined.....	325	double lock.....	275
BARRELS, closed, piers of, construction of.....	333	expedients.....	278
open, piers of, construction of.....	328	floating, description of, modification of.....	306
open, safe load of.....	329	floating, improvised.....	340a
		flying, description of.....	309
		forming, by successive pontoons.....	346
		forming, by parts.....	347
		forming, by rafts.....	348
		forming, by conversion ..	349
		masonry, how destroyed..	440-441
		maximum load for.....	247
		name of, how derived...	248, 310
		Paine's.....	260

	Par.		Par.
BRIDGE—CONTINUED.		CAPSTAN, description of....	242
pile.....	269	improvised field.....	243
protection of, from float-		CASEMATES, use and general	
ing objects.....	352	form of.....	138
railroad, repair of.....	407	how constructed, floor	
requirements of.....	244	space in.....	139
short, how anchored.....	343	CENTRIFUGAL FORCE of	
single lock.....	274	train.....	383
single sling.....	276	CHARCOAL, uses of.....	481
spar railroad.....	245	how made.....	482
suspension.....	280-6	CHARGES, several exploded	
suspension, how destroyed	450	at same time.....	435
swing.....	351	CHESS described....	242
trail.....	308	CHEVAUX-DE-FRISE.....	56
treble sling.....	277	CHOKER FASCINE, descrip-	
twenty-five feet or less...	258-9	tion and use of.....	117
twenty-five feet or over...		CIRCULAR VILLAGE, how	
	261, 271, 276	defended.....	214
BROADSIDE VILLAGE, how		CLARIFICATION of water..	476
defended.....	213	CLAY ROADS.....	367
BRUSH huts.....	503	COMMAND OF WORKS, def-	
sentry boxes.....	504	nition of.....	71
BRUSHWOOD, bundles of, va-		COMMON TRENCH work, how	
rieties and sizes.....	115	made, uses of.....	156
rate and method of clear-		COMMUNICATIONS, con-	
ing.....	46	struction of....	373, 374
roads.....	371	in woods.....	177
BUILDING, defense of, how		CONCENTRATED LOAD on	
regarded, first line, how		bridge.....	253
far distant.....	191	CONDUCTOR, metallic, for	
doors of, how barricaded,	195	telegraph.....	408
flank defense of.....	199	CONNECTING WIRES, how	
how used for defense.....	189	done.....	431
loopholing of.....	194	CORDUROY ROADS.....	370
materials used in defense		COUNTER-SCARP, definition,	
of.....	200	etc.....	65, 79
precautions in defense of.	19-	galleries.....	85
removal of.....	43, 438	COVER for guns.....	401
requisite of, for defense..	190	in woods, how obtained...	176
steps in preparing for de-		CRAB.....	240
fense.....	193	CREST, exterior.....	67
windows of, how barri-		interior.....	66
caded.....	197	military.....	153
BUOYANCY of casks, how de-		CRIB piers, construction of..	268
termined.....	325	pontoon, construction of...	322
BUZZACOTT oven, descrip-		CROSS, in telegraph wires....	419
tion of.....	497	CROSS ARMS, telegraph.....	410
BUZZER, theory of the.....	419	CROSSING of rivers, selec-	
CABLE, charge of explosive		tion of, how determined,	289
to cut.....	450	CROSSINGS, railroad.....	385
swinging, length of.....	309	CROW'S FEET.....	56
CAMP BEDS.....	499	CUTTING, how defended....	171, 172
CAMPS, drainage.....	498	DEAD LOAD on bridges.....	252
dry and healthy sites		DEBRIS, removal of.....	48
for.....	457, 459	DEFENDERS of woods, num-	
selection of.....	455, 456, 462	ber of.....	179
unhealthy sites for.....	458, 460	DEFENSE, of fences.....	168
windbreaks for.....	500	passive, with respect to	
CANISTER, description of...	11	lines of works.....	149
CANVAS PONTON, U. S.....	319	DEFILADE, definition of...	88
CANVAS RAFT, description of	303	in plan.....	89
CAPITAL of field works.....	82	in section.....	90, 91
CAPONIERS, objections to, 85,	146	with two planes.....	92
stockade work used for....	188	DEPTH of fords.....	290
used in flanking buildings,	199	DERRICK, description of...	237
		in using.....	240

	Par.		Par.
DESTROYING railroads, by		FACES of works.....	82
whom done.....	399, 400	FARMS, principles of defense	
by whom ordered.....	401	applied to.....	203
of telegraph lines.....	420	FASCINES, size, weight, and	
DETONATOR.....	429	making of.....	117
with fuse.....	428	FASTENINGS, rail.....	382
electrical.....	429	FAULTS in telegraph lines.....	419-20
DIGGING wells.....	470, 471, 472	FENCES, defense of.....	163
DIMENSIONS of loopholes.....	164	removal of when.....	48
DISABLING railroads.....	398	FERRY, the rope.....	307
DISTANCE between two in-		FERRYING by boat, embark-	
accessible points, method		ation, and unloading....	301
of finding.....	24	by raft.....	302
DISTRIBUTED load.....	253	FIELD GUNS, destruction of	451
DITCH.....	65, 81, 361	range of.....	13
depth of.....	96	FIELD LEVEL, description of	26
method of digging.....	101	FILTERS, portable.....	483-4
DOORS, how barricaded.....	195	simple.....	485
DOUBLE lock bridge.....	275	FILTERING water.....	480-1
DRAINS, catch and covered	361	FIRE, as regards direction,	
DRAINAGE of camps.....	498	trajectory.....	8
of roads.....	361	double tier of, for walls...	167
DRINKING water.....	465-9	sector of, discussion of...	86
DRIVEN wells.....	473-4	working parties exposed	
DRIVING piles.....	270	to.....	111
DYNAMITE, use of with de-		FLANK defense of buildings	199
tonator.....	428	FLANKS of works.....	82
		FLOOR space in casemates...	139
EARTH, excess of at salients.	97	FLOATING piers, essentials	
in embankments, space		of.....	314
occupied by.....	96	FLYING BRIDGES, raft for...	340
roads.....	366	telegraph lines.....	418
EARTHWORKS, calculation		sap, description of.....	157
of dimensions of.....	95	sap, method of extension	
ELECTRICAL fuse.....	429	along.....	158
EMBANKMENT, how defend-		FORDS, how made impassa-	
ed.....	170	ble.....	58
EMBARKATION, in ferrying	301	with sandy bottom.....	291
EMBRASURE.....	69	depth of, requisite of.....	290
used when, details and		in mountainous country...	291
construction of.....	103	level country.....	291
space required for.....	100	how marked, position of,	
ENGINE, locomotive.....	389	how determined.....	293
ENGINEERING, Military,		precautions in selecting...	295
Field, definition of.....	1	re-examinations of.....	296
EPAULEMENT, gun.....	40a, 70	where found.....	292
relative advantage of, and		FOREGROUND, extent of	
embrasures.....	70	clearing.....	43
EQUILATERAL TRIANGLE,		FORM, strap iron gabion....	120
method of laying out....	21	wicker gabion.....	118
ESCAPE in telegraph lines...	419	of roads.....	359
ESCARP.....	65, 79	FORMING BRIDGE by con-	
EXPEDIENTS, bridge.....	278	version.....	349
EXPLODER, electrical.....	430	by parts.....	347
EXPLOSIVES, kind general-		by rafts.....	348
ly used.....	421	by successive pontoons...	346
table of comparative		FORTS, how distinguished...	84
strength of.....	453	FORT WAGNER, parallels	
EXTENDING along zig-zag..	155	and approaches to.....	160
working party.....	109, 110, 155	FORTIFICATION, classes of.	
EXTENSION on flying sap,		compared to other milita-	
method of.....	158	ry expedients.....	7
EYE-BARS, how cut.....	448	object of.....	
EYE-SPLICE, to make.....	222	subdivision of field.....	3
		FOUGASSE, construction, use	
		and charge for.....	59

	Par.		Par.
FRAISES, construction and use of.....	55	ICE.....	297
FROGS.....	384	thickness of, how increased.....	299
railroad, how destroyed..	444	thickness of for various loads.....	298
FUSE.....	427	INFANTRY APPROACHES in siege operations.....	154
how used.....	428	INTERVALS between trenches.....	36
GABIONS, hoop or strap iron, weight and making of...	120	method of taking, by working parties.....	100
method of carrying.....	157	usual for working parties.....	111, 412
sheet iron, making of.....	121	INSULATORS, telegraph.....	412
wicker, size, weight, and making of.....	118	INSULATED WIRE JOINTS.....	431
making of without a gabion form.....	119	INTRENCHMENTS, HASTY, advantages and disadvantages of.....	39
GATES, destruction of.....	437	concealment of.....	38
GIN, description of.....	239	conditions to be fulfilled by.....	28
using.....	240	consist of.....	28
lashing, making of.....	227	for men standing.....	31
GLACIS.....	65, 80	for skirmishers lying.....	29
GORGE of works.....	82	for two ranks kneeling.....	30
GRADIENT, limiting of roads	355	for supports and reserves.....	33
GRAIN, removal of standing.	47	intervals in line of.....	36
GRASS, removal of standing.	47	isolated.....	32
GRAVEL ROADS.....	368	location of depends upon.....	35
GRILLAGE.....	493	on slopes.....	34
GAUGE of railroads.....	380	Russian and Japanese,....	29
GUARDING water supply.....	464	Spanish.....	31
GUN-COTTON.....	422	IRON PLATES, how cut.....	445
how detonated.....	428	ISOLATED PITS.....	32
GUN EPAULEMENTS and pits.....	40a	JOINTS for telegraph wire... American twist.....	417
GUNPOWDER, how ignited.	428	insulation of.....	431
used as an explosive.....	424	rail.....	381
GUTTERS.....	361	JUNCTIONS, railroad.....	386
HARD WATER.....	477	KING-POST TRUSS.....	272
HASTY DEMOLITION, tables showing charges for.....	452	KITCHENS.....	491-2
HEAD LOGS, use of.....	40	covered.....	491
HEALTHY CAMPS.....	457, 459	KNOTS, hitches, etc.....	219
HEDGES, advantages of. how derived, principles of...	169	LANCES, military, telegraph.	418
removed, when.....	48	LASHINGS, gin.....	227
HEIGHTS over which fire may be delivered.....	13	rack.....	224
HITCHES, knots, etc.....	219	shear.....	226
HOLDFASTS, description of.	243	transom.....	225
HOOPS, making of, for strap iron gabions.....	120	LATRINES.....	487, 490, 490a
HORSE, power of on grades..	356	LEAKS in telegraph line.....	419
HOUSES, demolition of.....	438	LEVEL, field, description of. uses of.....	26, 27
HURDLES, continuous, construction of.....	123	LIGHTNING ARRESTERS.....	411
size, weight and making of	122	LINES, cutting of ditch and trench.....	101
HUTS, brush.....	503	LINE, first, falling back past houses.....	192
how made, etc.....	501	parallel to given line, method of constructing.....	23
Army of Potomac (Major Smart's).....	502	LINES, second and third in woods.....	168
allowance of space in.....	501		
bamboo.....	505		

	Par.		Par.
LOAD, distributed, dead, and moving.....	253	PAN COUPE.....	102
LOADING HORSES in rail-road cars.....	393, 394	PARADOS, definition of.....	
LOADING WAGONS on rail-road cars.....	396	method of determining height of.....	93
LOG, cubic contents of.....	254, 335	PARALLEL to a given line, method of constructing.....	23
buoyancy of.....	334	PARALLELS and approaches, Fort Wagner.....	160
LOGS, piers of, construction of.....	338	PARAPET.....	63, 67, 81
LONG SPLICE, to make.....	221	PERPENDICULAR to a line, method of erecting.....	19
LOOPHOLES, dimensions of.....	164	PICKETS, forked.....	119
height of, how influenced.....	166	gabion.....	118
how made.....	40	PIERS, bridge, how destroyed.....	440, 449
in buildings.....	194	floating, essentials of.....	314
LOOPHOLING WALLS.....	163	of casks, precautions in using.....	327
method of.....	164, 165	of open boats, precautions in using.....	315
MACADAM ROADS.....	364	of open casks, construction of.....	323
MACHICOU LIS gallery, construction of, use of.....	199	of closed casks, construction of.....	330, 333
MAGAZINE, general plan of.....	141, 142	of logs, construction of.....	338, 339
large, small in parapet.....	140	PILE BRIDGES.....	269
of gabions and fascines.....	143	driving.....	279
rifle, range, speed, and fire of.....	14	PLANK ROADS.....	372
MAGNETO EXPLODER.....	430	PLANKS, when used for revetments.....	124
MARKING FORDS.....	293	PLOWS, use of.....	33
MATERIALS for bridges.....	287	PONTON CANVAS, U. S.....	319
for road coverings.....	365	crib, construction of.....	322
revetting.....	114	PONTON, box, construction of.....	323
used in defense of buildings.....	200	reserve train, U. S.....	320
MAXIMUM LOAD for bridge.....	247	wagon body, construction of.....	324
MERLON, definition of, rule as to minimum length of.....	104	POLES, telegraph, how guyed, number to mile, preparation of, protection from lightning, raising of, size of, where run.....	409, 411
METAL TIES.....	379	PORTABLE RAMP.....	393
MILITARY ENGINEERS, duties of.....	421	filters.....	483, 484
MILITARY TELEGRAPH lines.....	418	railroads.....	397
MINES, land, quantity of explosive necessary.....	60	timber wharf.....	267a
MOVING or LIVE LOADS.....	253	truss.....	279
OBJECTS, floating, protection of bridge from.....	352	POSITION, defensive, definition of, chief requisite of.....	4
OBSTACLES, conditions governing use of.....	49	choice of.....	42
OFFICE TELEGRAPH, treatment of when captured.....	420	strength of.....	153
OVENS.....	495-6	conditions to be fulfilled.....	4
Buzzacott.....	497	of ford, how determined.....	293
ORGANIZATIONS, or parts of, used as working parties.....	42	POWER of horse on slopes.....	356
OVERHAUL TACKLE.....	231	exerted by man.....	236
PAINE'S BRIDGE.....	260	of tackle.....	233-5
PALISADES, consist of.....	54	PRECAUTIONS, additional, in defending buildings.....	198
PALISADING, destruction of.....	435	in fording.....	295
PAIRING.....	118	PROFILES, angle, how determined.....	94
		definition and nomenclature of.....	65
		normal, of field works.....	99



	Par.		Par.
PROFILING, method of.....	94	ROADS, brushwood.....	371
PULLEY, description of.....	228	clay.....	367
QUEEN-POST TRUSS.....	273	corduroy.....	370
ACK, fascine, description		desirable conditions in.....	354
and use of.....	117	drainage of.....	361
lashing to make.....	224	earth.....	366
AFT, canvas, description of,	303	form of.....	359
for trail bridge.....	308	gravel.....	368
of skins.....	304	knowledge of.....	353
FTS, advantages and dis-		limiting gradients of.....	355
advantages of.....	305	plank.....	372
for flying bridge.....	340	repair of.....	369
swinging, for traffic.....	351	surface of.....	362
RAIL FASTENINGS.....	382	width of.....	358
form of.....	380	ROADWAY, weight of, steady-	
joints.....	381	ness of.....	313
how cut.....	435	width of on bridges.....	248, 280-6
straightening.....	407	ROPE, breaking loads of,	
RAILROAD, bridge.....	245	weight of.....	218
crossings.....	385	composition, size of, etc.....	216
junction.....	386	ROPE, parts of.....	219, 230
wye.....	387	rule for strength of.....	217
turntable.....	388	expedient for tightening,	308
RAILROADS, duties of troops		RUNNING BLOCKS.....	228
in connection with.....	375		
description of.....	377	SAG in telegraph wire.....	414
destroying and disabling,		SALIENT village, how de-	
by whom done.....	398-400	fended.....	212
how disabled and des-		SAND-BAGS, materials, size,	
troyed.....	402, 403	capacity, and filling.....	127
portable.....	397	SAP, flying, description of.....	157
repair of.....	404	SAW, teeth of.....	44
rolling stock, buildings,		use of.....	44
etc.....	390, 391	SECTOR OF FIRE, definition	
RAMP, portable.....	393	of and application to dif-	
semi-permanent.....	395	ferent traces.....	86
simple form of.....	392	SELECTING CAMPS.....	455-6, 462
RANDING.....	122	SENTRY BOXES.....	504
REDOUTS.....	84	SEWAGE, device for des-	
RELIEFS, 1st, 2nd and 3rd of		truction of.....	490b
working party, cutting		SEWING, method of, for gabi-	
lines for tasks of.....	101	ons and hurdles.....	118
of field work, definition of	72	SHEAR LASHINGS.....	226
RESERVE TRAIN, ponton,		SHEARS, description of.....	238
U. S.....	320	method of using.....	240
REVTMENT, definition of	113	SHELL.....	9
making and qualities of		charges, how exploded.....	12
adobe.....	137	penetration.....	154
of brushwood.....	128	shrapnel.....	11
of fascines.....	129	SHORT SPLICE, to make.....	220
of gabion.....	130	SHOVELERS, extra, provid-	
of hurdle and continuous		ed when.....	101
hurdle.....	131	SIDINGS, railroad.....	384
of pisa.....	136	SINGLE LOCK BRIDGE.....	274
of plank.....	124, 132	SINGLE SLING BRIDGE.....	276
of posts.....	135	SITE for floating bridge, selec-	
of sand bag.....	133	tion of.....	311
of sod.....	126, 133	plane of, definition.....	73
of timber.....	125, 132	SLEWING.....	122
of bamboo.....	137a	SLOPE, banquette.....	65
RIBBANDS.....	55	description of.....	17
ROAD-BED.....	360	exterior.....	65, 77
defense of.....	173	interior.....	65, 76
materials.....	365	superior.....	65, 76



	<i>Par.</i>		<i>Par.</i>
SMALL PITS, how made.....	57	TELFORD ROADS.....	363
how destroyed.....	453	TERREPLEIN.....	74
SNAATCH BLOCK.....	228	THICKNESS of materials	
SODS for revetments, cutting		proof against small arms.....	15
and laying.....	126	TIES, metal.....	379
SPAN, superstructure, string-		wood.....	378
ers or barks, side rails,		TIMBER BRIDGE, how de-	
etc.....	248	stroyed.....	433
SPANS, 25-ft. or less.....	258, 259	felled, removal of.....	45
25-ft. or over.....	261, 271, 276	kinds preferable for stock-	
SPARS, arrangement of.....	257	ade.....	186
SPLICE, long.....	221	round for revetments.....	125
eye.....	222	standing, removal of.....	43, 44
SPLINTER PROOF for tren-		TOOLS, carrying of by work-	
ches.....	35	ing parties.....	108
STERLIZER, The Forbes.....	485a	cutting, intrenching used	
STOCKADE, advantages of,		in the field.....	41
definition of.....	180	taking of, by working par-	
how destroyed.....	436	ties.....	107
kind of timber preferable		used in felling timber.....	44
for.....	186	TORPEDO, U. S. bridge.....	433
loopholes in.....	184	TORPEDOES, automatic.....	453
loopholes, when cut in		TRACE, definition of.....	64
of vertical timbers.....	182	selection of.....	89
of same, square and round		TRANSOM, strength of.....	250
timbers.....	183	TRAVERSE, definition of.....	68
of horizontal timber.....	187	method of determining	
STOCKADE, of R. R. iron, de-		height of.....	93
stroyed how.....	436	TREAD BANQUETTE.....	65
when employed.....	181	TREBLESING BRIDGE....	277
work used for tambours		TREE INSULATOR and tie.....	415
and caponiers.....	188	TREES, cutting of.....	44, 45
STRAIGHTENING RAILS.....	407	how to fell with explosives	432
STREAMS, unfordable, how		TRENCH.....	65
passed.....	294	common uses of, how made,	
velocity of, how deter-		drainage of.....	98
mined.....	296	method of digging.....	101
width of, how determined,		TRENCHES, advantages and	
STRENGTH OF MATERIALS		disadvantages of.....	39
of rope.....	217, 218	conditions to be fulfilled	
SUB-DRAINS.....	361	by.....	28
SUSPENSION BRIDGES.....	280-6	disguising location of.....	38
SWITCH, split and stub.....	384	intervals in line of.....	36
TABLE of breaking loads.....	218	kneeling or sitting.....	30
of constant "C".....	253	location of.....	35
of weights of materials.....	254	lying.....	29
showing amounts of revet-		standing.....	31
ting materials for 100		Spanish.....	31
linear feet of revetment,		TROOPS, weight of on bridge,	252
TACKLE, description of.....	229	TRESTLES, capped.....	264
formula for power of.....	235	tie block.....	263
power of.....	233-4	two legged.....	265
to prevent twisting.....	232	three-legged.....	266
to round in, to overhaul...	231	four-legged.....	267
TAMBOUR.....	147	six-legged.....	262
stockade work used for.....	188	TRUSS, king-post.....	272
used in flanking buildings...	199	queen-post.....	273
TASKS..... (Pl. 14, 16) 111,		portable.....	279
laying out of.....	101	TUNNELS, how destroyed...	442
in constructing parallels		repair of.....	406
and approaches.....	Pl. 22	TURNABLES, railroad....	388
responsibility for comple-		UNLOADING in ferrying....	301
tion of.....	106	horses from R. R. cars.....	394
TELEGRAPH MESSAGES....	408	wagons from cars.....	396
lines how destroyed.....	420	URINALS.....	488, 489
TELEPHONE, outpost cart for	418		

	Par.		Par.
VELOCITY of streams, how determined.....	296	WIRE, connection of.....	431
VILLAGE, advantages and disadvantages of for defense.....	206	entanglements, high, low, how made.....	52, 53
artillery, where placed in defense of.....	215	entanglements, how destroyed.....	454
broadside, how defended..	213	how stretched, hanging of, secured to.....	414
circular, how defended....	214	how strung across streams	415
cover for supports and reserves in.....	215	telegraph.....	408
in defense of, precautions necessary.....	205	tie.....	413
defense of depends on....	208	WITHERS, making and use of	117
arrangements for defense of.....	205	WOODS, artillery in.....	179
garrison of, how determined.....	211	communications in.....	177
objects in holding.....	207	cover in.....	176
salient, how defended.....	212	lying beyond position....	175
value of, for defense.....	205	number of defenders of...	179
arrangement for defense of, how made.....	210	preparation of edge of...	174
		2d and 3d lines in.....	178
WAGON BODY PONTON, construction of.....	324	WORKS, constructed by troops to occupy.....	5
WAGONS, prepared for crossing on ice.....	299	double line of.....	150
WALLS, for double tiers of fire.....	167	fixed types of necessary...	6
discussion of as military expedients.....	161	groups of, intermediate, when used.....	149
loopholing.....	163-5	line of.....	148
preparation of for defense	162	advantages and principles of.....	149
removal of.....	48	WORKS, field, conditions to be fulfilled.....	62
how destroyed.....	439	calculation of cross section of.....	95
WATER, clarification of.....	476	classification as to trace..	83
drinking.....	465-9	defilade of.....88, 89 90, 91, 92	
filtering.....	480-1	details of construction of.....99, 100, 101	
guarding.....	464	length of crest for assumed garrison.....	100
necessity of and amount required.....	463-4	open, closed, and half closed, definitions, advantages, and disadvantages.....	83
WATER TABLES on roads...	361	continuous line of, cremaillere, blunted redan, redan with curtains, tenaille, tenaille and redan, trace of.....	152
WATLING.....	118	Russian,.....	84
WEEDS, removal of.....	47	WORKING parties, extension of.....	109
WEIGHT of materials.....	254	organization of.....	105
of rope.....	218	when under fire.....	111
of troops on bridge.....	252	WYE, R. R.....	387
WELLS, digging of.....	470-2		
driven.....	473-4	ZIG-ZAG, direction of, length of.....	159
WIDTH OF ROADS.....	358	extending along.....	
WINCH.....	240		
WINDLASS, description of..	241		
WINDBREAKS, for camps....	500		
WINDOWS of buildings, how barricaded.....	167		





# 4340954

Library of the Marine Corps



3000183349

# MARINE CORPS HISTORICAL LIBRARY

HQMC ROOM 3127



Manual of Military Field Engineering

5433

